





Class \_\_\_\_\_

Book \_\_\_\_\_

PRESENTED BY

\_\_\_\_\_







# ELEMENTARY

## TABULAR SYSTEM

OF

### INSTRUCTION IN FRENCH,

COMPRISING THE FOLLOWING SUBJECTS, TO BE STUDIED IN CONNECTION WITH THE  
GRAMMAR TEXT-BOOK, VIZ.:

#### TABLES.

- No. 1. The Definite Article.
2. The Indefinite Article.
3. The Partitive Article.
4. The Demonstrative pron. Conjunctive.
5. The Demonstrative pron. Disjunctive.
6. The Demonstratives *Celui qui* and *que*.
7. Interrogative pronoun with noun.
8. Int. adj. pron. referring to last noun.
9. Possessive pron. Conjunctive.
10. Possessive pron. Disjunctive.
11. Verbs, Scheme of Derivation.
12. Personal pron. Nom. and Objective.

#### TABLES.

- No. 13. Place and order of Objective pronouns.
14. Adverbs of Quantity.
15. Conjunctions req. Subjunctive.
16. Supplying words in answer.
17. Pronunciation of Numeral adj.
18. Use of *Y avoir*.
19. Reflected Verbs and use of Past tense.
20. Difference between English and French prepositions.
21. Use of Subjunctive.
22. Course of Idioms.

THE WHOLE DEVISED, AND ARRANGED IN PRACTICAL FORM, FOR THE USE OF  
THE CADETS OF THE U. S. MILITARY ACADEMY

BY H. R. AGNEL,

Professor of French.

---

A. S. BARNES AND COMPANY,  
NEW YORK AND CHICAGO.

1874.

PC 2111  
.A283

## FRENCH AND GERMAN.

---

### IMPORTANT PUBLICATIONS BY A. S. BARNES & CO.

**PUJOL'S COMPLETE FRENCH CLASS-BOOK;** or, "French in One Volume"; embracing Grammar, Conversation, Literature, with Commercial Correspondence and an adequate Dictionary. By Louis PUJOL, A. M., of the University of France.

**MAURICE-POITEVIN'S GRAMMAIRE FRANCAISE:** Cours Théorique et Pratique, adopté en France, par le Conseil de l'Instruction Publique. Par M. POITEVIN. (In the Vernacular.) Adapted to American students by Prof. M. B. MAURICE, of the U. S. Naval Academy.

**WORMAN'S FRENCH ECHO and WORMAN'S GERMAN ECHO;** or, Dialogues to teach Conversation, on a plan which leads the learner to think in the language he speaks, instead of translating his thoughts—a common fault of students. By JAMES H. WORMAN, A. M., of Drew Theological Seminary.

**WORMAN'S GERMAN GRAMMAR.** With Exercises, Readings, Conversations, Paradigms, and an adequate Vocabulary. This is the most systematic, ingenious, and scholarly presentation of the language found in any of our modern text-books.

**WORMAN'S GERMAN READER.** New selections from Göethe, Schiller, Körner, Seume, Uhland, Freiligrath, Heine, Schlegel, Höltz, Lenau, Wieland, Herder, Lessing, Kant, Fichte, Schelling, Winkelmann, Humboldt, Ranke, Raumer, Menzel, Gervinus, &c., and contains complete, Göethe's "Iphigenie," Schiller's "Jungfrau"; also, for instruction in modern conversational German, Benedix's "Eigensinn."

**WORMAN'S GERMAN COPY-BOOKS.** For instruction and practice in penmanship.

---

*The Publishers' Descriptive Catalogue, with fuller details, prices, etc., will be mailed to any applicant enclosing a stamp.*

A. S. BARNES & COMPANY, NEW YORK.

---

Entered according to Act of Congress, in the year 1862,  
BY H. R. AGNEL,  
In the Clerk's Office of the District Court of the United States for the  
Southern District of New York.

# TABULAR SYSTEM.

TABLE I.  
The Definite Article.

	MASCULINE SINGULAR.	FEMININE SINGULAR.	COMMON TO EITHER GENDER. SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
The.	<i>le.</i>	<i>la.</i>	<i>l'.</i>	<i>les.</i>
Of or from the.	<i>du.</i>	<i>de la.</i>	<i>de l'.</i>	<i>des.</i>
To or at the.	<i>au.</i>	<i>à la.</i>	<i>à l'.</i>	<i>aux.</i>
Prepositions. Of, } From, } <i>de.</i> To, } At, } <i>à.</i>	Used before nouns masculine be- ginning with a consonant.	Used before nouns feminine begin- ning with a consonant.	Used before nouns of either gender beginning with a vowel or <i>h</i> mute.	Used before all nouns plural.

## APPLICATION.

Combined with plural of nouns and the auxiliary verb *avoir*.

QUESTIONS.	ANSWERS.
Have you the master's book?	I have not the master's book.
Have I given the house and garden to the man or the woman?	You have given the garden to the woman and the house to the man.
Has he sent the cabbages to the boats?	He has sent the cabbages to the boats, and the boats to the canals.
Have the generals seen the arsenals?	The generals have not seen the arsenals, but the admirals have seen the light-houses.
Will the children have the gloves?	They will not have the gloves, they will have the coats.
Have you not given the jewels to the marshal?	I have given the jewels to the lady of the house.
Have you spoken from the window?	I have not spoken from the window, I have spoken from the balcony.
Was he at the bank or at the wharf?	He was not at the bank, he was at the wharf.

## MODE OF RECITATION.

For the purposes of recitation upon tables, the pupil is sent to the blackboard with slips in the following form:

TABLE I. THE DEFINITE ARTICLE.				No. 1.
	MASCULINE	FEMININE	COMMON.	PLURAL.
The. Of or from the. To or at the.				
				Verb avoir.  Indicative Present. Simple and compound.
APPLICATION.				
QUESTIONS.			ANSWERS.	
Have you the master's book?			I have not the master's book.	
Have I given the house and garden to the man or to the woman?			You have given the garden to the woman and the house to the man.	
Has he sent the cabbages to the boats?			He has sent the cabbages to the boats, and the boats to the canals.	

These he transcribes, filling up the blanks with the correct French renderings, translating the practical examples in accordance with the principles developed in the table, and explaining these principles when called upon to recite. The same method is followed for each succeeding table.

The following diagram exhibits the board as filled up by the pupil:

TABLE I.		THE DEFINITE ARTICLE.		
	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	COMMON.	PLURAL.
The.	<i>le.</i>	<i>la.</i>	<i>l'.</i>	<i>les.</i>
Of or from the.	<i>du.</i>	<i>de la.</i>	<i>de l'.</i>	<i>des.</i>
To or at the.	<i>au.</i>	<i>à la.</i>	<i>à l'.</i>	<i>aux.</i>

**APPLICATION.**

Q. Avez-vous le livre du maître?	A. Je n'ai pas le livre du maître.
Q. Ai-je donné la maison et le jardin à l'homme ou à la femme?	A. Vous avez donné le jardin à la femme et la maison à l'homme.
Q. A-t-il envoyé les choux aux bateaux?	A. Il a envoyé les choux aux bateaux, et les bateaux aux canaux.

**Avoir.**

IND. PR. SIMPLE.		COMPOUND.	
<i>J'ai.</i>	<i>nous avons.</i>	<i>J'ai eu.</i>	<i>nous avons eu.</i>
<i>tu as.</i>	<i>vous avez.</i>	<i>tu as eu.</i>	<i>vous avez eu.</i>
<i>il a.</i>	<i>ils ont.</i>	<i>il a eu.</i>	<i>ils ont eu.</i>
<i>elle a.</i>	<i>elles ont.</i>	<i>elle a eu.</i>	<i>elles ont eu.</i>
<i>on a.</i>		<i>on a eu.</i>	

## VOCABULARY.

Master,	<i>maître.</i>	Arsenal,	<i>arsenal, m.</i>	Bank,	<i>banque, f.</i>
Book,	<i>livre, m.</i>	Lighthouse,	<i>fanal, m.</i>	Wharf,	<i>quai, m.</i>
House,	<i>maison, f.</i>	Child,	<i>enfant, m.</i>	Sent,	<i>envoyé.</i>
Garden,	<i>jardin, m.</i>	Glove,	<i>gant.</i>	Seen,	<i>vu.</i>
Man,	<i>homme.</i>	Coat,	<i>habit, m.</i>	Given,	<i>donné.</i>
Woman,	<i>femme.</i>	Jewel,	<i>bijou, m.</i>	Spoken,	<i>parlé.</i>
Cabbage,	<i>chou, m.</i>	Marshal,	<i>maréchal.</i>	Or,	<i>ou.</i>
Boat,	<i>bateau, m.</i>	Lady,	<i>dame.</i>	And,	<i>et.</i>
Canal,	<i>canal, m.</i>	Window,	<i>fenêtre, f.</i>	But,	<i>mais.</i>
General,	<i>général.</i>	Balcony,	<i>balcon, m.</i>		

## TABLE II.

## The Indefinite Article.

	MASCULE.	FEMININE.	PRONUNCIATION.
A or an.	<i>un.</i>	<i>une.</i>	<i>un livre.</i>
Of or from a.	<i>d'un.</i>	<i>d'une.</i>	<i>un ouvrage.</i>
To or at a.	<i>à un.</i>	<i>à une.</i>	<i>une maison. une histoire.</i>

## APPLICATION.

Combined with the verb *avoir*.

## QUESTIONS.

Have I a handkerchief?  
 Hast thou a house?  
 Has he a friend?  
 Has she a card?  
 Have we a carpet?  
 Have they an admiral?  
 Had I spoken of a palace?  
 Hadst thou spoken from a window?  
 Had he spoken to a foreigner?  
 Had we not given a table to a lady?  
 Have you read a novel?  
 Had they sent a horse to the house?  
 Would you have a house and a garden?  
 Have you thrown a stone at a cat or at  
 a dog?

## ANSWERS.

You have a handkerchief.  
 I have a house.  
 He has a friend.  
 She has a card.  
 You have a carpet.  
 They have an admiral.  
 You had spoken of a palace.  
 I had spoken from a balcony.  
 He had not spoken to a foreigner, he  
 had spoken to a friend.  
 You had given a table to a gentleman.  
 I have read a novel.  
 They had sent a horse to the stable.  
 We should have a house, a garden and a  
 horse.  
 From a window I have thrown a stone  
 at a cat.

## VOCABULARY.

Handkerchief, <i>mouchoir</i> , m.	Palace, <i>palais</i> , m.	Horse, <i>cheval</i> .
Friend, <i>ami</i> , m.	Foreigner, <i>étranger</i> , m.	Stable, <i>écurie</i> , f.
Card, <i>carte</i> , f.	Table, <i>table</i> , f.	Cat, <i>chat</i> , m.
Carpet, <i>tapis</i> , m.	Gentleman, <i>monsieur</i> .	Dog, <i>chien</i> .
Admiral, <i>amiral</i> .	Novel, <i>roman</i> , m.	Thrown, <i>jeté</i> .

## TABLE III.

## The Partitive Article.

	MASCULINE SINGULAR.	FEMININE SINGULAR.	COMMON TO EITHER GENDER. SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Some or any.	<i>du.</i>	<i>de la.</i>	<i>de l'.</i>	<i>des.</i>
Of or from some.	<i>de.</i>	<i>de.</i>	<i>d'.</i>	<i>de.</i>
To or at some.	<i>à du.</i>	<i>à de la.</i>	<i>à de l'.</i>	<i>à des.</i>

## APPLICATION.

## QUESTIONS.

## ANSWERS.

Have you any bread?

I have some bread.

Has he any beer?

He has some beer.

Have we any water?

You have some water.

Have they any apples?

They have some apples.

I speak of some bread.

We speak of some beer.

You speak of some water.

They speak of some apples.

Have you added some gold to some copper?

No, sir, I have added some silver to some lead.

Has he added some water to some beer?

Yes, sir, he has added some water to some beer.

Have they added some wine to some water?

They have added wine to water.

Has she spoken to some men?

She has spoken to some men and women.

N. *Some* or *any*, when preceding an adjective, or in a sentence purely negative, must be rendered by *de*, and *some* or *any* when understood in English, must be expressed in French.

## EXAMPLES.

Have you any good wine?

I have not any good wine, or, I have no good wine.

Have you good or bad water?

I have good water, I never have bad water.



Will you have good books to-day? I shall have no good books to-day, I shall have good books to-morrow.  
Has he any bread? He has no bread, he has wine and meat

VOCABULARY.

Bread,	<i>pain</i> , m.	Copper,	<i>cuivre</i> , m.	Good,	<i>bon</i> .
Beer,	<i>bière</i> , f.	Silver,	<i>argent</i> , m.	Bad,	<i>mauvais</i> .
Water,	<i>eau</i> , f.	Lead,	<i>plomb</i> , m.	To-morrow,	<i>demain</i> .
Apple,	<i>pomme</i> , f.	Wine,	<i>vin</i> , m.	Added.	<i>ajouté</i> .
Gold,	<i>or</i> , m.	Meat,	<i>viande</i> , f.		

TABLE IV.

The Demonstrative Adjective Conjunctive.

	MASCULINE SINGULAR.		FEMININE SING.	PLURAL.
This or that.	<i>Ce.</i>	<i>Cet.</i>	<i>Cette.</i>	<i>Ces</i> , These, those.
Of or from this.	<i>de ce.</i>	<i>de cet.</i>	<i>de cette.</i>	<i>de ces</i> , of these.
To or at this.	<i>à ce.</i>	<i>à cet.</i>	<i>à cette.</i>	<i>à ces</i> , to these.
	Used before masculine nouns beginning with a consonant.	Used before masculine nouns beginning with a vowel or silent <i>h</i> .	Used before feminine nouns singular.	Used before plural nouns.

For proximity add *ci* to the noun, as: *Ce dé-ci*. This thimble.

For distance add *là* to the noun, as: *Ce dé-là*. That thimble.

APPLICATION.

PROXIMITY.

QUESTIONS.

Is this wine old?  
Is this woman sick?  
Is this bird very pretty?  
Are these horses good?  
Are these trees dead?

ANSWERS.

This wine is old.  
This woman is sick.  
This bird is very pretty.  
These horses are not good.  
These trees are not dead.

DISTANCE.

Is that glass broken?  
Is not that bottle clear?  
Is not that man very tall?

That glass is not broken.  
That bottle is clean.  
That man is very tall.

Are those generals prudent?

Those generals are prudent.

Were not those children obedient?

Those children were obedient.

## PROMISCUOUS.

Have you given this money to that man? I have given the money to that woman.

Was not this bird in that cage?

That bird was not in that cage, it was in this cage.

Were those men with these men?

These men were not with those men, but these women were with those women.

## VOCABULARY.

Bird, *oiseau*, m.Old, *vieux*.Clean, *propre*.Tree, *arbre*, m.Sick, *malade*.Tall, *grand*.Glass, *verre*, m.Pretty, *joli*.Prudent, *prudent*.Bottle, *bouteille*, f.Dead, *mort*.Obedient, *obéissant*.Cage, *cage*, f.Broken, *cassé*.Given, *donné*.

## TABLE V.

**The Demonstrative Pronoun Disjunctive, determining Proximity or Distance.**

PROXIMITY.	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.
This one. Of or from this one. To or at this one.	SINGULAR. <i>Celui-ci.</i> <i>de celui-ci.</i> <i>à celui-ci.</i>	SINGULAR. <i>Celle-ci.</i> <i>de celle-ci.</i> <i>à celle-ci.</i>
	PLURAL. <i>Ceux-ci.</i> <i>de ceux-ci.</i> <i>à ceux-ci.</i>	PLURAL. <i>Celles-ci.</i> <i>de celles-ci.</i> <i>à celles-ci.</i>
DISTANCE.	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.
That one. Of or from that one. To or at that one.	SINGULAR. <i>Celui-là.</i> <i>de celui-là.</i> <i>à celui-là.</i>	SINGULAR. <i>Celle-là.</i> <i>de celle-là.</i> <i>à celle-là.</i>
	PLURAL. <i>Ceux-là.</i> <i>de ceux-là.</i> <i>à ceux-là.</i>	PLURAL. <i>Celles-là.</i> <i>de celles-là.</i> <i>à celles-là.</i>



APPLICATION.

QUESTIONS.

ANSWERS.

Have you opened this door?	I have not opened that one.
Have you shut that shutter?	I have not shut that one.
Have you broken that board?	I have not broken that one.
Have you spoken of these merchants or of those?	I have not spoken of those, I have spoken of these.
Have they given bread to those children?	They have given bread to these and water to those.
Is that pen good?	That one is good, this one is very bad.
Are those houses good or bad?	Those are good, these are very bad.
Had you this one or that one?	I had that one.
When will they have those?	They will have those to-morrow.

VOCABULARY.

Door, <i>porte</i> , f.	Pen, <i>plume</i> , f.	Broken, <i>cassé</i> .
Shutter, <i>volet</i> , m.	To-morrow, <i>demain</i> .	Bad, <i>mauvais</i> .
Board, <i>planche</i> , f.	Opened, <i>ouvert</i> .	
Merchant, <i>négociant</i> .	Shut, <i>fermé</i> .	

TABLE VI.

The Demonstratives *Celui que* and *Celui qui*.

	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	
	SINGULAR.	SINGULAR.	NOMINATIVE.
The one.	<i>Celui.</i>	<i>Celle.</i>	The one who, } He who, } The one that, } <i>Celui qui.</i> The one which, } He that, }
Of or from the one.	<i>de celui.</i>	<i>de celle.</i>	
To or at the one.	<i>à celui.</i>	<i>à celle.</i>	
	PLURAL.	PLURAL.	OBJECTIVE.
Those.	<i>Ceux.</i>	<i>Celles.</i>	The one whom, } He whom, } The one which, } <i>Celui que.</i> The one that, }
Of or from those.	<i>de ceux.</i>	<i>de celles.</i>	
To or at those.	<i>à ceux.</i>	<i>à celles.</i>	

APPLICATION.

QUESTIONS.

ANSWERS.

<i>Nominative.</i>	
Where is the one that was here?	The one that was here is on the desk.
Have you spoken of the one that was here?	I have spoken of the one that was here, and of the one that was in the box.

Have you spoken to the man? I have spoken to the one who was here this morning.

Where are those that were here? Those that were here are in the desk.

Have you not spoken to the men? I have spoken to those who were here this morning.

*Objective.*

Have you the one I had yesterday? I have the one that you had.

Had you spoken of the one he had this morning? I had not spoken of the one he had, I had spoken of the one you had.

Have they spoken to the one I had seen yesterday? They have not spoken to the one whom you had seen yesterday; they have spoken to the one who was here yesterday.

Have you those that I had yesterday? I have those that you had yesterday morning.

Had you spoken of those he had this morning? I had not spoken of those he had, I had spoken of those you had.

VOCABULARY.

Desk, *bureau*, m.

Yesterday, *hier*.

Here, *ici*.

Box, *boîte*, fh. f.

Yesterday morning, *hier matin*.

In, *dans*.

Morning, *matin*, m.

Where, *où*.

Or, *ou*.

TABLE VII.

Interrogative Adjective Pronoun, with Noun.

	MASCULINE.		FEMININE.	
	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
What, which.	<i>Quel.</i>	<i>Quels.</i>	<i>Quelle.</i>	<i>Quelles.</i>
Of or from which.	<i>de quel.</i>	<i>de quels.</i>	<i>de quelle.</i>	<i>de quelles.</i>
To or at which.	<i>à quel.</i>	<i>à quels.</i>	<i>à quelle.</i>	<i>à quelles.</i>

APPLICATION.

MASCULINE.

QUESTIONS.

*Singular.*

Which book have you?

Of which book do you speak?

To which workman have you given the money?

*Plural.*

Which books have you lost

ANSWERS.

I have the one you had.

I speak of the one you had this morning.

I have given the money to the one that was here.

I have lost those that I had found here.

Of which works do they speak? They speak of those that are in the trunk.

To which horses have you given hay? I have given hay to that man's.

FEMININE.

*Singular*

Which pen has she? She has the one I had.

Of which pen does she speak? She speaks of this one.

To which mare has he given the water? He has given the water to that one.

*Plural.*

Which women have the feathers? Those that were here this morning.

From which cities has he received the letters? From those which are on the bank of the river.

To what ladies have you written? I have written to those who were here yesterday.

VOCABULARY.

Work,	<i>ouvrage, m.</i>	Feather,	<i>plume, f.</i>	Lost,	<i>perdu.</i>
Workman,	<i>ouvrier.</i>	City,	<i>ville, f.</i>	Found,	<i>trouvé.</i>
Trunk,	<i>malle, f.</i>	Letter,	<i>lettre, f.</i>	Written,	<i>écrit.</i>
Hay,	<i>foin, m.</i>	Bank,	<i>bord, m.</i>	Given,	<i>donné.</i>
Mare,	<i>jument.</i>	River,	<i>rivière, f.</i>	Received,	<i>reçu.</i>

TABLE VIII.

Interrogative Adjective Pronoun, referring to last Noun.

	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.
	SINGULAR.	SINGULAR.
Which one.	<i>lequel.</i>	<i>laquelle.</i>
Of or from which one.	<i>duquel.</i>	<i>de laquelle.</i>
To or at which one.	<i>auquel.</i>	<i>à laquelle.</i>
	PLURAL.	PLURAL.
Which.	<i>lesquels.</i>	<i>lesquelles.</i>
Of or from which.	<i>desquels.</i>	<i>desquelles.</i>
To or at which.	<i>auxquels.</i>	<i>auxquelles.</i>

APPLICATION.

REFERRING TO MASCULINE NOUNS.

QUESTIONS.

*Singular.*

Which one have you?

ANSWERS.

I have the one you had.

Of which one do you speak?	I speak of the one you have.
To which one do you speak?	I speak to that one.
<i>Plural.</i>	
Which have you?	I have those you had yesterday.
Of which do you speak?	I speak of those you have.
To which do you speak?	I speak to those.

*Referring to Feminine Nouns.*

## QUESTIONS.

## ANSWERS.

*Singular.*

Which one has she?	She has the one you had.
Of which one does she speak?	She speaks of the one you have.
To which one do you speak?	I speak to this one.

*Plural.*

Which have you?	I have those you had yesterday.
Of which do you speak?	I speak of those you have.
To which do you speak?	I speak to those.

## TABLE IX.

**The Possessive Pronouns Conjunctive.**

	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	PLURAL.	
	SINGULAR.	SINGULAR.	MASC. & FEM.	
My.	<i>mon.</i>	<i>ma.</i>	<i>mes.</i>	Declined with the prepositions <i>de</i> and <i>d.</i>
Thy.	<i>ton.</i>	<i>ta.</i>	<i>tes.</i>	
His, her, its.	<i>son.</i>	<i>sa.</i>	<i>ses.</i>	
Our.	<i>notre.</i>	<i>notre.</i>	<i>nos.</i>	
Your.	<i>votre.</i>	<i>votre.</i>	<i>vos.</i>	
Their.	<i>leur.</i>	<i>leur.</i>	<i>leurs.</i>	

These pronouns agree in gender and number with *the thing possessed*, and never with *the possessor*.

Before Feminine Nouns beginning with a vowel or *h* mute, use *mon*, *ton*, *son*, instead of *ma*, *ta*, *sa*—this to avoid clashing of vowels.

## APPLICATION.

## QUESTIONS.

## ANSWERS.

Where is my clerk?	He is in thy shop.
Are my clerks in my friend's shop?	They are in thy brother's house.

Where is my brother's inkstand?	Thy brother's inkstand is in my box.
Is his son sick?	His son is not sick.
Is her son sick?	Her son is not sick now.
Are his trunks in his carriage?	His trunks are not in his carriage.
Are her trunks in her carriage?	Her trunks are in her carriage, and her carriage is at her door.
Is his door shut?	His door is open.
Do you speak of her husband?	I do not speak of her husband, I speak of her daughter.
Do you speak of his wife?	I speak of his daughters and of his sons.
Have you spoken to his uncle?	I have not spoken to his uncle, I have spoken to his aunt.
Is our house large?	Our house is very large.
Are our rooms small?	Our rooms are not small.
Is your cap in your box?	My cap is in my box.
Are your guns clean?	Our guns are clean.
Is their ship in the port?	Their ship is in the port.
Are their ships in your ports?	Their ships are not in our ports.
Where is my sword?	Thy sword is here.
Where is thy needle?	My needle is there.
Is his history surprising?	His history is surprising.
Is not his ambition great?	His ambition is very great.

VOCABULARY.

Clerk,	<i>commis.</i>	Carriage,	<i>voiture, f.</i>	Ambition,	<i>ambition, f.</i>
Shop,	<i>boutique, f.</i>	Room,	<i>chambre, f.</i>	Now,	<i>à présent.</i>
Brother,	<i>frère.</i>	Cap,	<i>casquette, f.</i>	Small,	<i>petit.</i>
Husband,	<i>mari.</i>	Gun,	<i>fusil, m.</i>	Clean,	<i>propre.</i>
Wife,	<i>femme.</i>	Ship,	<i>navire, m.</i>	Large,	} <i>grand.</i>
Daughter,	<i>fille.</i>	Port,	<i>port, m.</i>	Great,	
Son,	<i>fil.</i>	Sword,	<i>épée, f.</i>	Tall,	
Uncle,	<i>oncle.</i>	Needle,	<i>aiguille, f.</i>	Surprising,	<i>surprenant.</i>
Aunt,	<i>tante.</i>	History,	<i>histoire, f.</i>	Open,	<i>ouvert.</i>

TABLE X.  
The Possessive Pronouns Disjunctive.

	MASCULINE.		FEMININE.	
	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Mine.	<i>le mien.</i>	<i>les miens.</i>	<i>la mienne.</i>	<i>les miennes.</i>
Thine.	<i>le tien.</i>	<i>les tiens.</i>	<i>la tienne.</i>	<i>les tiennes.</i>
His, hers.	<i>le sien.</i>	<i>les siens.</i>	<i>la sienne.</i>	<i>les siennes.</i>
Ours.	<i>le nôtre.</i>	<i>les nôtres.</i>	<i>la nôtre.</i>	<i>les nôtres.</i>
Yours.	<i>le vôtre.</i>	<i>les vôtres.</i>	<i>la vôtre.</i>	<i>les vôtres.</i>
Theirs.	<i>le leur.</i>	<i>les leurs.</i>	<i>la leur.</i>	<i>les leurs.</i>

These Pronouns must be declined throughout with the Definite Article :

<i>le</i>	<i>la</i>	<i>les</i>	} as: of mine,	<i>le mien.</i>	<i>les miens.</i>	<i>la mienne.</i>
<i>du</i>	<i>de la</i>	<i>des</i>		<i>du mien.</i>	<i>des miens.</i>	<i>de la mienne.</i>
<i>au</i>	<i>à la</i>	<i>aux</i>		<i>au mien.</i>	<i>aux miens.</i>	<i>à la mienne, &amp;c.</i>

And must be of the same gender and number as the nouns they represent.

#### APPLICATION.

##### *Speaking of a Masculine Noun.*

QUESTIONS.	ANSWERS.
<i>S.</i> Is mine good?	Yours is good.
Are you speaking of mine?	I am speaking of yours.
Does he give water to mine?	He gives water to yours.
<i>Pl.</i> Are mine good?	Yours are good.
Are you speaking of mine?	I am speaking of yours.
Does he give bread to mine?	He gives bread to yours.
<i>S.</i> Is thine here?	Mine is here.
Is he speaking of thine?	He is speaking of mine.
Has he sent seed to thine?	He has sent seed to mine.
<i>Pl.</i> Are not thine here?	Mine are here.
Is she speaking of thine?	She is speaking of mine.
Have they sent seed to thine?	They have sent seed to mine.
<i>S.</i> Was his here yesterday?	His was here this morning.
Was I speaking of his?	You were speaking of his.
Have you given water to his?	I have given water to his.



<i>Pl.</i> Were his here this morning?	His were here this morning.
Were we speaking of his?	You were speaking of his.
Have they given hay to his?	They have given water to his.
<i>S.</i> Is hers in the parlor?	Hers is on the chair.
Shall I speak of hers?	Do not speak of hers.
Has he given a book to hers?	He has given a book to hers.
<i>Pl.</i> Are hers in the drawer?	Hers are in the box.
Have you spoken of hers?	I have spoken of hers.
Have you spoken to hers?	I have not spoken to hers.
<i>S.</i> Where is ours?	Yours is here.
Were you speaking of ours?	I was speaking of yours.
Does he give money to ours?	He gives money to yours.
<i>Pl.</i> Where are ours?	Yours are in my pocket.
Would you speak of ours?	I would speak of yours.
Do they give money to ours?	They give money to yours.
<i>S.</i> Is yours sold?	Mine is not sold.
Has he sold a little of yours?	He has sold a little of mine.
Have you added water to yours?	I have added wine to mine.
<i>Pl.</i> Are yours sold?	Mine are not sold.
Has he sold two of yours?	He has sold three of mine.
Have you added wine to yours?	I have added water to mine.
<i>S.</i> Have you seen theirs?	I have not seen theirs.
Have you spoken of theirs?	I have spoken of theirs.
Has he given seed to theirs?	He has given seed to theirs.
<i>Pl.</i> Were theirs good or bad?	Theirs were very good.
Do you speak of theirs?	I speak of theirs.
Give water and hay to theirs.	I have already given water and hay to theirs and to yours also.

N. A section having written upon the blackboard this set of questions and answers referring to masculine nouns, will subsequently be exercised on the same, as referring to feminine nouns.

VOCABULARY.

Seed, <i>graine, f.</i>	Sent, <i>envoyé.</i>	Also, <i>aussi.</i>
Money, <i>argent, m.</i>	Added, <i>ajouté.</i>	Sold, <i>vendu.</i>
Pocket, <i>poche, f.</i>	A little, <i>un peu.</i>	Added, <i>ajouté.</i>

TABLE XI.  
Scheme for the Derivation of Tenses of Regular Verbs.

FIVE PRIMITIVES.		FIRST CONJUGATION.	DERIVATIVE TENSES.	
FIRST.	INFINITIVE PRESENT.	<i>Parler</i> ,	Future absolute by changing the termination <i>er</i> into <i>rai</i> , &c. Conditional present by changing the termination <i>er</i> into <i>erais</i> , &c.	
SECOND.	PARTICIPLE PRESENT.	<i>Parlant</i> ,	Three persons plural of indicative present by changing <i>ant</i> into <i>ons</i> , <i>ez</i> , <i>ent</i> . Imperfect of indicative by changing <i>ant</i> into <i>ais</i> , <i>ais</i> , <i>ais</i> , <i>ions</i> , <i>iez</i> , <i>aient</i> . Subjunctive present by changing <i>ant</i> into <i>e</i> , <i>es</i> , <i>e</i> , <i>ions</i> , <i>iez</i> , <i>ent</i> .	
THIRD.	PART. PAST.	<i>Parlé</i> ,	Serves to form compound tenses, as, <i>J'ai parlé</i> , <i>Je suis trahi</i> .	
FOURTH.	INDICATIVE PRESENT.	<i>Je parle</i> ,	Second person singular of imperative by dropping the pronoun <i>Je</i> . First and second persons plural of imperative by dropping the pronouns <i>nous</i> and <i>vous</i> . The third persons of imperative are identical with the third persons of subjunctive present.	
FIFTH.	PRETERITE DEFINITE.	<i>Je parlai</i> ,	Imperfect of subjunctive by changing <i>ai</i> into <i>asse</i> , <i>asses</i> , <i>ât</i> , <i>assions</i> , <i>assiez</i> , <i>assent</i> .	

PRIMITIVE TENSES OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS.

FIRST CONJUGATION. 2700 VERBS.	SECOND CONJUGATION. 220 VERBS.	THIRD CONJUGATION. 6 VERBS.	FOURTH CONJUGATION. 25 VERBS.
<i>Parler</i> . <i>Parlant</i> . <i>Parlé</i> . <i>Je parlai</i> .	<i>Finir</i> . <i>Finissant</i> . <i>Finî</i> . <i>Je finis</i> . <i>Je finis</i> .	<i>Recevoir</i> . <i>Recevant</i> . <i>Reçu</i> . <i>Je reçois</i> . <i>Je reçois</i> .	<i>Vendre</i> . <i>Vendant</i> . <i>Vendu</i> . <i>Je vends</i> . <i>Je vends</i> .

NOTE.—The third person plural of indicative present, the three persons singular, and the third person plural of subjunctive present cannot be derived regularly in this conjugation.



OBSERVATIONS.

1. Having the primitive tenses of the second, third, and fourth conjugations, the pupil will assimilate their respective schemes of derivation to the scheme for the first conjugation.

2. The termination—*ir* To obtain the } *irai.* To obtain the con- } *irais.*  
 The termination—*avoir* future, he will } *evrai.* ditional, he will al- } *evrais.*  
 The termination—*re* alter to } *rai.* ter them to } *rais.*

3. He will pay particular attention to the irregularities observable in the third conjugation.

4. In deriving from the present participles of the second and third conjugations *Fin-issant*, *Rec-evant*, he will confine himself to altering *ant* of the termination.

5. In the second, third and fourth conjugations, the imperfect of subjunctive is formed from the preterite definite, by altering the terminations *is*, *us*, *is* to *isse*, *usse*, *isse* for the first person singular, in the three conjugations respectively.

After one recitation upon Table XI, verbs are conjugated with reference to their derivation, and are written in the following form upon the verb-board.

PRIMITIVE TENSES.					
1. <i>Étudi</i>   <i>er.</i>					
2. <i>Étudi</i>   <i>ant.</i>					
3. <i>Étudi</i>   <i>é.</i>					
4. <i>J'étudi</i>   <i>e.</i>					
5. <i>J'étudi</i>   <i>ai.</i>					
J'.	TU.	IL, ELLE, ON.	NOUS.	VOUS.	ILS, ELLES.
<i>étudie.</i>	<i>étudies.</i>	<i>étudie.</i>	<i>étudions.</i>	<i>étudiez.</i>	<i>étudient.</i>
<i>étudiais.</i>	<i>étudiais.</i>	<i>étudiait.</i>	<i>étudiions.</i>	<i>étudiez.</i>	<i>étudiaient.</i>
<i>étudiai.</i>	<i>étudias.</i>	<i>étudia.</i>	<i>étudiâmes.</i>	<i>étudiâtes.</i>	<i>étudièrent.</i>
<i>étudierai.</i>	<i>étudieras.</i>	<i>étudiera.</i>	<i>étudierons.</i>	<i>étudierez.</i>	<i>étudieront.</i>
<i>étudierais.</i>	<i>étudierais.</i>	<i>étudierait.</i>	<i>étudierions.</i>	<i>étudieriez.</i>	<i>étudieraient.</i>
<i>que</i>	<i>étudie.</i>	<i>qu'il étudie.</i>	<i>étudions.</i>	<i>étudiez.</i>	<i>qu'ils étudient.</i>
<i>étudie.</i>	<i>étudies.</i>	<i>étudie.</i>	<i>étudiions.</i>	<i>étudiez.</i>	<i>étudient.</i>
<i>qu'etudiasse.</i>	<i>étudiasses.</i>	<i>étudiât.</i>	<i>étudiassions.</i>	<i>étudiassiez.</i>	<i>étudiassent.</i>

**Regular Verbs of the four Conjugations for Application of Table XI., the same Verbs occurring in the Application of succeeding Tables.**

## FIRST CONJUGATION.

To breakfast.	<i>Déjeuner.</i>
To dine.	<i>Dîner.</i>
To sup.	<i>Souper.</i>
To walk.	<i>Marcher.</i>
To speak.	<i>Parler.</i>
To study.	<i>Etudier.</i>
To pay.	<i>Payer.</i>
To try.	<i>Essayer.</i>
To finish.	<i>Achever.</i>
To give.	<i>Donner.</i>
To bring.	<i>Apporter.</i>
To lend.	<i>Prêter.</i>
To carry.	<i>Porter.</i>
To show.	<i>Montrer.</i>
To apply.	<i>Appliquer.</i>
To strike.	<i>Frapper.</i>
To shut.	<i>Fermer.</i>
To play.	<i>Jouer.</i>
To sign.	<i>Signer.</i>
To bend.	<i>Plier.</i>
To buy.	<i>Acheter.</i>
To wash.	<i>Laver.</i>
To wear.	<i>Porter.</i>
To examine.	<i>Examiner.</i>
To take.	} <i>Mener.</i>
To lead.	

## SECOND CONJUGATION.

To succeed.	<i>Réussir.</i>
To act.	<i>Agir.</i>
To establish.	<i>Etablir.</i>
To perish.	<i>Périr.</i>
To obey.	<i>Obéir.</i>
To choose.	<i>Choisir.</i>
To build.	<i>Bâtir.</i>
To disobey.	<i>Désobéir.</i>
To applaud.	<i>Applaudir.</i>

## THIRD CONJUGATION.

To deceive.	<i>Décevoir.</i>
To receive.	<i>Recevoir.</i>
To owe.	<i>Devoir.</i>
To perceive.	<i>Apercevoir.</i>
To conceive.	<i>Concevoir.</i>

## FOURTH CONJUGATION.

To hear.	<i>Entendre.</i>
To wait.	<i>Attendre.</i>
To answer.	<i>Répondre.</i>
To sell.	<i>Vendre.</i>
To descend.	<i>Descendre.</i>
To defend.	<i>Défendre.</i>
To correspond.	<i>Correspondre.</i>
To render.	<i>Rendre.</i>
To spill.	<i>Répandre.</i>
To return.	<i>Rendre.</i>

A

**TABLE OF PERSONAL PRONOUNS:**

**NOMINATIVE, OBJECTIVE, DIRECT AND INDIRECT,**

**AND USED AFTER**

**PREPOSITIONS.**

TABLE XII.

**A Table of Personal Pronouns, Nominative, Objective, direct and indirect, Isolated, Emphatic, and used after Prepositions.**

NOMINATIVE.	OBJECTIVE BEFORE THE VERB.		OBJECTIVE AFTER THE VERB.		ISOLATED. TO EXPRESS EMPHASIS. AFTER A PREPOSITION.
	DIRECT.	INDIRECT.	DIRECT.	INDIRECT.	
<i>Je.</i>	<i>me.</i>	<i>me.</i>	<i>moi.</i>	<i>moi.</i>	<i>moi.</i>
<i>tu.</i>	<i>te.</i>	<i>te.</i>	<i>toi.</i>	<i>toi.</i>	<i>toi.</i>
<i>il.</i>	<i>le.</i>	<i>lui.</i>	<i>le.</i>	<i>lui.</i>	<i>lui.</i>
<i>elle.</i>	<i>la.</i>	<i>lui.</i>	<i>la.</i>	<i>lui.</i>	<i>elle.</i>
<i>on.</i>	<i>se.*</i>	<i>se.</i>			<i>soi.</i>
<i>nous.</i>	<i>nous.</i>	<i>nous.</i>	<i>nous.</i>	<i>nous.</i>	<i>nous.</i>
<i>vous.</i>	<i>vous.</i>	<i>vous.</i>	<i>vous.</i>	<i>vous.</i>	<i>vous.</i>
<i>ils.</i>	<i>les.</i>	<i>leur.</i>	<i>les.</i>	<i>leur.</i>	<i>eux. (m.)</i>
<i>elles.</i>	<i>les.</i>	<i>leur.</i>	<i>les.</i>	<i>leur.</i>	<i>elles. (f.)</i>

#### DIVISION OF OBJECTIVE PRONOUNS.

The Objective Pronouns are divided into *Direct* and *Indirect*. The student will easily distinguish the personal pronoun used as the *Direct Objective* to a verb, by the fact that there is in English no preposition between the verb and this pronoun.

The personal pronoun representing the *Indirect Objective* to the verb, answers to the Indirect Objective of the English, with the preposition *to* expressed or understood.

#### \* DIFFERENT MEANINGS OF THE PRONOUN *se.*

*Se.*  
DIRECT.  
One's self.  
Himself.  
Herself.  
Itself.  
Themselves

*Se.*  
INDIRECT.  
To one's self.  
To himself.  
To herself.  
To itself.  
To themselves.

# Analysis and Application of Pronouns Personal.

THE PERSONAL PRONOUNS NOMINATIVE.		
<i>Je.</i>	I.	
<i>tu.</i>	thou.	<i>Tu</i> is used among near relations, very intimate friends, and school-fellows: it is also employed poetically.
<i>il.</i>	he.	
<i>elle.</i>	she.	
<i>on.</i>	{ one. they. people.	<i>On</i> , Nominative Indefinite; always requires the verb in the third person singular.
<i>nous.</i>	we.	
<i>vous.</i>	you.	Used as in English: <i>vous</i> may express <i>one</i> or <i>several</i> .
<i>ils. (m.)</i>	they.	
<i>elles. (f.)</i>	they.	

## PRACTICE COMBINED WITH REGULAR VERBS OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS.

FIRST CONJUGATION.	SECOND CONJUGATION.	THIRD CONJUGATION.	FOURTH CONJUGATION.
I breakfast.	I succeed.	I deceive.	I hear.
Thou wast dining.	Thou was acting.	Thou wast receiving.	Thou wast waiting.
He supped.	He established.	He owed.	He answered.
She will walk.	She will perish.	She will perceive.	She will sell.
He would study.	People would obey.	People would re-	People would de-
Let people pay.	In order that we may	ceive.	scend.
Although we may	choose.	Although we may	He will defend.
study.*	Although you might	conceive.	In order that you may
In order that you	build.	Although you owed.	correspond.
might bring.*	They will have dis-	They are receiving.	In order that you
They ( <i>m.</i> ) have tried.	obeyed.	They have been de-	might wait.
They ( <i>f.</i> ) had lent.	They would have ap-	ceived.	In order that you
	plauded.		might hear.

\* Although,  
In order that,

*Quoique.*  
*Afin que.*

} These conjunctions govern the subjunctive mood.

THE PERSONAL PRONOUNS DIRECT AND INDIRECT OBJECTIVE TO  
THE VERB.

OBJECTIVE BEFORE THE VERB.

DIRECT.		INDIRECT.	
<i>me.</i>	<i>me.</i>	<i>me.</i>	to me.
<i>te.</i>	<i>thee.</i>	<i>te.</i>	to thee.
<i>le.</i>	<i>it, him.</i>	<i>lui.</i>	to him.
<i>la.</i>	<i>it, her.</i>	<i>lui.</i>	to her.
<i>nous.</i>	<i>us.</i>	<i>nous.</i>	to us.
<i>vous.</i>	<i>you.</i>	<i>vous.</i>	to you.
<i>les (m. &amp; f.)</i>	<i>them.</i>	<i>leur (m. &amp; f.)</i>	to them.

PLACE OF OBJECTIVE PRONOUNS.

Objective personal pronouns must be placed *before the verb*, except when the verb is in the *Imperative Affirmative*. When the imperative is used negatively, they resume their place *before* the verb, and are expressed by the pronouns objective before the verb. In *compound tenses*, the objective pronouns are placed immediately *before* the *auxiliary verb*.

APPLICATION.

DIRECT.

He will give me to another master.  
 He will sell thee soon.  
 He has sold it.  
 He will receive her well.  
 They will take us to the house.  
 She was giving you to another mistress.  
 I had them in my pocket.  
 He hears me.  
 I hear thee.  
 She hears him.  
 He receives her.  
 We shall sell it.  
 You will defend them.  
 They have received them.

INDIRECT.

He will give me the best books.  
 He will sell the best books to thee.  
 I shall speak to him to-morrow.  
 I spoke to her yesterday.  
 I gave her a lesson this morning.  
 He gave water to us.  
 We sell wine to you.  
 He sells them cloth.  
 He has sold them shoes.  
 You would have lent her books.  
 When will you lend her money?  
 When will they sell him the goods?  
 They would have sent them the stockings.

THE PERSONAL PRONOUNS DIRECT AND INDIRECT: OBJECTIVE TO THE VERB.

OBJECTIVE AFTER THE VERB WITH IMPERATIVE AFFIRMATIVE.

DIRECT.		INDIRECT.	
<i>moi.</i>	me.	<i>moi.</i>	to me.
<i>toi.</i>	thyself.	<i>toi.</i>	to thyself.
<i>le.</i>	it, him.	<i>lui.</i>	to him.
<i>la.</i>	it, her.	<i>lui.</i>	to her.
<i>nous.</i>	us.	<i>nous.</i>	to us.
<i>vous.</i>	{ yourself. { yourselves.	<i>vous.</i>	{ to yourself. { to yourselves.
<i>les. (m. &amp; f.)</i>	them.	<i>leur (m. &amp; f.)</i>	to them.

APPLICATION.

DIRECT.

Sell me to another master.  
Render thyself capable.  
Give it to the girl.  
Give her to a better mistress.  
Observe us.  
Render yourself skilful.  
Send them to the store.  
Carry them to the bank.  
Show them to the women.

NEGATIVELY.

Do not sell me to another mistress.  
Do not render thyself unworthy.  
Do not give her to another master.  
Do not send them to the store.  
Do not observe us.

INDIRECT.

Sell me a good horse.  
Apply this observation to thyself.  
Give him a better pen.  
Sell her the sweet oranges.  
Bring the best oranges to her.  
Give us money. Give yourself trouble.  
Show them the garden.  
Show the flowers to them.  
Return them their books.

NEGATIVELY.

Do not sell me a bad horse.  
Do not apply that remark to thyself.  
Do not give him a bad pen.  
Do not sell her the sour oranges.  
Do not show them the black coats.

*vous - lui - indigne*



1. ISOLATED. 2. TO EXPRESS EMPHASIS. 3. AFTER A PREPOSITION.

<i>moi.</i> .	me.	N. In the case of isolation, the <i>nomina-tive</i> pronouns are used in English; in such cases the French pronouns must be rendered by the following:	I.
<i>toi.</i>	thee.		thou.
<i>lui.</i>	him.		he.
<i>elle.</i>	her.		she.
<i>nous.</i>	us.		we.
<i>vous.</i>	you.		you.
<i>eux.</i> (m.)	them.		they.
<i>elles.</i> (f.)	them.		they.

APPLICATION.

ISOLATED.	EMPHATIC.	AFTER A PREPOSITION.
QUESTIONS.      ANSWERS.		
Who is there?      I.	<i>I</i> study but <i>thou</i> playest.*	Play with me.
Who has the book? Thou.		They are dining with-
Who will knock at the door?      He.	<i>He</i> was signing the letters and <i>she</i> was folding them.	out thee.
Who will shut the store?      She.	<i>You</i> have dined, but <i>we</i> have not yet breakfasted.	I speak before her.
What persons were in the house?      We.		He walks behind us.
Who is in the street?      You.	<i>They</i> will buy the goods and <i>you</i> will sell them.	He will speak against them. ( <i>m.</i> )
What men will be here to-day?      They.	<i>We</i> wash the dresses and <i>they</i> wear them.	He will examine the necklaces for them. ( <i>f.</i> )
What women will be here to-morrow? They.		Let us study our lessons without him.
		Did you dine with her?

\* *Emphatic form.*—*I* study but *thou* playest. *Moi, j'étudie mais toi, tu joues, &c.*



TABLE XIII.

*Place and order of Personal Pronouns objective to the Verb.*

## BEFORE THE VERB.

1.	2.	3.	4.	5.
me.	le.	lui.	y.	en.
te.	la.	le.		
se.	les.			
nous.				
vous.				

## Remarks.

1. Two or more pronouns of the *same column* cannot be used *together* as *objectives* before the same verb.

2. A pronoun of *column 1*, and a pronoun of *column 3*, cannot be used *together* as *objectives* before the same verb.

3. In compound tenses, the objective pronoun must be placed *immediately before* the auxiliary verb.

*Examples.*—Il me la donna. Il m'en donna. Il m'y envoya. Il me les y envoya. Il nous y envoya. Il t'y en envoya. Il vous les y envoya. Il se la rappelle. Il s'en repent. Il le lui y envoya. Il leur y en envoya. Il y en envoya. Il l'en avertit. Il les leur y envoya. Donnez-le-moi. Entraînez-les-y. Retourne-t'y-en. Parlez-m'en. Dis-le-m'y. Parlez-nous-y.

## AFTER THE VERB.

1.	2.	3.	4.
le.			moi.
la.			toi.
les.	nous.	y.	en.
	vous.		
	lui.		
	leur.		
m'.		y.	en.
t'.			

## Remarks.

1. Objective pronouns are placed *after* the verb only in the Imperative *affirmative*, and when so placed must be connected with the verb and with each other by a hyphen or hyphens.

2. *Me* and *te* objectives, become after the verb, *moi* and *toi*; except before *y* and *en*, when they become *m'* and *t'*. No hyphen is used with the apostrophe.

3. With *several* pronouns objective, it is preferable to avoid the use of the Imperative affirmative by giving such a turn to the phrase as to *bring the pronoun before the verb*. Thus, for *envoyez-les-y-moi* use *veuillez me les y envoyer*.



TABLE XIII.  
The Place and Order of Personal Pronouns when Objective to the Verb.

Avertir de. TO WARN OF.																																		
me le. te le. se le. se le. le lui. nous le. vous le. le leur.		me la. te la. se la. se la. la lui. nous la. vous la. la leur.		me les. te les. se les. se les. les lui. nous les. vous les. les leur.		m'en. t'en. s'en. s'en. lui en. nous en. vous en. leur en.		m'y. t'y. s'y. s'y. t'y. nous y. vous y. leur y.		me l'y. te l'y. se l'y. se l'y. le } lui y. nous l'y. vous l'y. le } leur y.		me les y. te les y. se les y. se les y. les lui y. nous les y. vous les y. leur y.		m'y en. t'y en. s'y en. s'y en. lui y en. nous y en. vous y en. leur y en.		Il Je Il-on Elle Ils-elles Nous Vous Nous Vous		donnera. donnerai. donneras. procure, procurent, porterons. porterez. enverrons. avez rendu		Se procurer. du. dus. dus.		m'en t'en. l'en.		Il m'en avertit. Nous t'en avertissons. Je t'en ai averti. m. Je t'en ai avertie. f										
The objective pronouns are always placed before the verb, except in the Imperative affirmative, when they are placed after the verb. In compound tenses they must be placed before the auxiliary verb.																																		
THE PRONOUN ME WITH AN IMPERATIVE AFFIRMATIVE.										IN THE NEGATIVE FORM OF IMPERATIVE, THE OBJECTIVE PRONOUNS RESUME THEIR PLACE AND ORDER BEFORE THE VERB, AS IN THE ABOVE TABLE.																								
Give me, Give it to me, Give it to me, Give them to me, Give me some, Send me there,										Do not give me, Do not give it to me, Do not give it to me, Do not give them to me, Do not give me any, Do not send me there, ne me donnez pas. ne me le donnez pas. ne me la donnez pas. ne me les donnez pas. ne m'en donnez pas. ne m'y envoyez pas.																								
PRINCIPLE FOR NEGATIVE AND INTERROGATIVE FORMS.																																		
The objective pronouns, once added to the verb, remain inseparable from the latter throughout the four forms, as :																																		
1. Aff., 2. Neg., 3. Inter., 3. Int. Neg.,										vous vous ne me le donnez me le donnez- vous ? ne me le donnez- vous pas ?										1. vous 2. vous ne 3. me l'avez 4. ne me l'avez- vous donné ? vous pas donné ? vous donné ? vous pas donné ?										You had given it to me. You had not given it to me. Had you given it to me? Had you not given it to me?				

## Application of Table XIII.

## SLIPS FOR RECITATION AT BLACKBOARD.

PLACE AND ORDER OF PERSONAL PRONOUNS OBJECTIVE.			
No. 1.			
It to me.	} Masc.	<i>donner.</i>	He gives it to me.
Him to me.		<i>rappeler.</i>	He calls him back to me.
It to me.	} Fem.	<i>prêter.</i>	She will lend it to me.
Her to me.		<i>rappeler.</i>	He would call her back to me.
Them to me.		<i>refuser.</i>	He has refused them to me.
Some to me.		<i>prêter.</i>	He would have lent some to me.
To me there.		<i>donner.</i>	They gave a book to me there.
It to me there.		<i>envoyer.</i>	He has sent it to me there.
Them to me there.		<i>apporter.</i>	He would have brought them to me there.
Some to me there.		<i>prêter.</i>	They will lend some to me there.
No. 2.			
It to thee.	} Masc.	<i>prêter.</i>	He lent it to thee.
Him to thee.		<i>rappeler.</i>	She called him back to thee.
It to thee.	} Fem.	<i>fournir.</i>	We will furnish it to thee.
Her to thee.		<i>vendre.</i>	He would sell her to thee.
Them to thee.		<i>devoir.</i>	He owes them to thee.
Some to thee.		<i>devoir.</i>	Although he may owe some to thee.
To thee there.		<i>donner.</i>	He will give money to thee there.
It to thee there.		<i>envoyer.</i>	He would have sent it to thee there.
Them to thee there.		<i>rendre.</i>	They have returned them to thee there.
Some to thee there.		<i>vendre.</i>	In order that I might sell some to thee there.
No. 3.			
It to himself.	} Masc.	<i>se procurer.</i>	He procures it for himself.*
Him to himself.		<i>s'attirer.</i>	He attracts him to himself.

\* The French verb *procurer* requires the preposition *à*, thus, "To procure for one's self" is translated by *se procurer*, meaning literally *to procure to one's self*; hence in this particular case, and in others analogous, *for himself* becomes in the French construction *to himself*. *Se procurer* translates also, to get: thus, he gets it, *Il se le procure*. Literally, He [unto himself] it procures.

It to himself.	} Fem.	<i>se procurer.</i> He has procured it for himself.
Her to himself.		<i>s'attirer.</i> He has attracted her to himself.
Them to himself.		<i>se procurer.</i> He will procure them for himself.
Some to himself.		<i>se procurer.</i> He would procure some for himself.
To himself there.		<i>s'attirer.</i> He has attracted a crowd to himself there.
It to himself there.		<i>se procurer.</i> He will get it there for himself.
Them to himself there.		<i>se procurer.</i> He has got them there.
Some to himself there.		<i>se procurer.</i> He would have got some there.
<hr/>		
No. 4		
It to herself.	} Masc.	<i>se procurer.</i> She procures it for herself.
Him to herself.		<i>s'attirer.</i> She attracts him to herself.
It to herself.	} Fem.	<i>se procurer.</i> She has procured it for herself.
Her to herself.		<i>s'attirer.</i> She would attract her to herself.
Them to herself.		<i>se procurer.</i> She procured them for herself.
Some to herself.		<i>se procurer.</i> She procures some for herself.
To herself there.		<i>s'attirer.</i> She attracts attention to herself there.
It to herself there.		<i>se procurer.</i> She will get it for herself there.
Them to herself there.		<i>s'attirer.</i> Let her attract them to herself there.
Some to herself there.		<i>se procurer.</i> Although she may get some there.
<hr/>		
No. 5		
It to themselves.	} Masc.	<i>se procurer.</i> They procure it for themselves.
Him to themselves.		<i>s'attirer.</i> They attract him to themselves.
It to themselves.	} Fem.	<i>se procurer.</i> They have procured it for themselves.
Her to themselves.		<i>s'attirer.</i> They have attracted her to themselves.
Them to themselves.		<i>se procurer.</i> They will procure them for themselves.
Some to themselves.		<i>se procurer.</i> They have procured some for themselves.
To themselves there.		<i>s'attirer.</i> They attract admiration to themselves there.
It to themselves there.		<i>se procurer.</i> They have got it there.
Them to themselves there.		<i>s'attirer.</i> They will attract them to themselves there.
Some to themselves there.		<i>se procurer.</i> Let them get some there.

## No. 6.

It to him.	} Masc.	<i>devoir.</i>	I owe it to <u>him</u> .
It to her.		<i>devoir.</i>	They owe it to her.
It to him.	} Fem.	<i>vendre.</i>	I shall sell it to <u>him</u> .
It to her.		<i>devoir.</i>	I should owe it to her.
Them to him.		<i>rendre.</i>	I have returned them to <u>him</u> .
Them to her.		<i>vendre.</i>	I have sold them to her.
Some to him.		<i>rendre.</i>	Although I may return some to <u>him</u> .
Some to her.		<i>devoir.</i>	Although he might owe some to her.
It there.		<i>envoyer.</i>	She has sent it there.
It to him there.		<i>envoyer.</i>	She has sent it to him there.
It to her there.		<i>porter.</i>	We have carried it to her there.
Them to him there.		<i>apporter.</i>	They will bring them to him there.
Some to her there		<i>porter.</i>	We are carrying some to her there.

## No. 7.

It to us.	} Masc.	<i>donner.</i>	You will give it to us.
Him to us.		<i>vendre.</i>	You will sell him to us.
It to us.	} Fem.	<i>donner.</i>	You have given it to us.
Her to us.		<i>vendre.</i>	You have sold her to us.
Them to us.		<i>fournir.</i>	Although he may furnish them to us.
Some to us.		<i>fournir.</i>	Although he might furnish some to us.
To us there.		<i>envoyer.</i>	He has sent a book to us there.
Us there.		<i>envoyer.</i>	He has sent us there.
It to us there.		<i>rendre.</i>	She will return it to us there.
Them to us there.		<i>porter.</i>	They are carrying them to us there.
Some to us there.		<i>envoyer.</i>	He was sending some to us there.

## No. 8.

It to you.	} Masc.	<i>donner.</i>	I am giving it to you.
Him to you.		<i>vendre.</i>	He was selling him to you.



It to you.	} Fem.	<i>rendre.</i>	We returned it to you.
Her to you.		<i>mener.</i>	We took her to you.
Them to you.		<i>louer.</i>	We will hire them to you.
Some to you.		<i>prêter.</i>	We have lent you some.
You there.		<i>envoyer.</i>	The men have sent you there.
It to you there.		<i>porter.</i>	I will carry it to you there.
Them to you there.		<i>porter.</i>	They would have carried them to you there.
Some to you there.		<i>rendre.</i>	My brother will return some to you there.

No. 9.

It to them.	} Masc.	<i>rendre.</i>	I was returning it to them.
Him to them.		<i> vendre.</i>	They are selling him to them.
It to them.	} Fem.	<i>louer.</i>	I hire it to them.
Her to them.		<i>louer.</i>	I have hired her to them.
Them to them.		<i>donner.</i>	We would have given them to them.
Some to them.		<i>prêter.</i>	You would have lent them some.
To them there.		<i>envoyer.</i>	She has sent money to them there.
Them there.		<i>envoyer.</i>	She has sent them there.
It to them there.		<i>envoyer.</i>	My father has sent it to them there.
Them to them there.		<i>rendre.</i>	They would have returned them to them there.
Some to them there.		<i>envoyer.</i>	My mother would have sent some to them there.

No. 10.

THE PRONOUN ME WITH AN IMPERATIVE.

*Affirmatively.*

Give me the book.  
 Give it to me.  
 Give me the letter.  
 Give it to me.  
 Give them to me.  
 Give some to me.  
 Return it to him.  
 Return it to them.  
 Return some to them.  
 Send me there.

*Negatively.*

Do not give me the book.  
 Do not give it to me.  
 Do not give me the letter.  
 Do not give it (*f.*) to me.  
 Do not give them to me.  
 Do not give me any.  
 Do not return it to him.  
 Do not return it to them.  
 Do not return them any.  
 Do not send me there.



## TABLE XIV.

## Adverbs of Quantity, and Negative Adverbs.

Adverbs of quantity require in French the particle *de*, to unite them to the noun which follows them. When not followed by the noun whose quantity they express, that noun, when direct objective of a verb, must be represented by the pronoun *en*.

		WITH NOUN.	WITHOUT NOUN.
<i>Assez.</i>	Enough.	<i>Ai-je assez de pain ?</i>	<i>Vous en avez assez.</i>
<i>Beaucoup.</i>	Much.	<i>Avez-vous beaucoup de viande ?</i> <i>A-t-il beaucoup d'amis ?</i>	<i>J'en ai beaucoup.</i> <i>Il en a beaucoup.</i>
	Very much.		
	A great deal.		
<i>Combien.</i>	Many.	<i>Combien d'argent a-t-elle ?</i> <i>Combien de pommes ai-je ?</i> <i>Nous avons tant de peine !</i>	<i>Combien en a-t-elle ?</i> <i>Combien en ai-je ?</i> <i>Nous en avons tant !</i>
	Very many.		
	How much.		
<i>Tant.</i>	How many.	<i>Vous avez tant d'enfants !</i> <i>Aurai-je autant d'eau que lui ?</i>	<i>Vous en avez tant !</i> <i>Vous en aurez autant.</i>
	So much.		
<i>Autant.</i>	So many.	<i>A-t-elle autant de pain que vous ?</i> <i>Avez-vous moins de fil que moi ?</i>	<i>Elle en a autant.</i> <i>J'en ai moins que vous.</i>
	As much.		
<i>Moins.</i>	As many.	<i>Ont-ils trop de sucre ?</i> <i>Lavent-elles trop de robes ?</i>	<i>Ils en ont trop.</i> <i>Elles en lavent trop.</i>
	Less.		
<i>Trop.</i>	Too much.	<i>Ne mangez-vous plus de riz ?</i>	<i>Je n'en mange plus.</i>
	Too many.		
	No more.		
<i>Ne-plus.</i>	Not any more.	<i>Je n'ai pas d'amis, en avez-vous ?</i> <i>N'avez-vous guère de vin ?</i> <i>Vous n'avez pas beaucoup de vin.</i>	<i>Je n'en ai point.</i> <i>Je n'en ai guère.</i> <i>Je n'en ai pas beaucoup.</i>
	No longer any.		
	No longer any more.		
<i>Ne- { pas. point.</i>	No.	<i>Je n'ai guère d'amis, en avez-vous beaucoup ?</i> <i>Je n'ai plus guère de vin.</i> <i>Vous n'avez plus guère de cidre.</i>	<i>Je n'en ai guère.</i> <i>Je n'en ai plus guère.</i> <i>Vous n'en avez plus guère.</i>
	Not any.		
	Not much.		
<i>Ne-guère.</i>	But little.	<i>J'ai peu de sel.</i> <i>J'ai très-peu de sel.</i>	<i>J'en ai peu.</i> <i>J'en ai très-peu.</i>
	Not many.		
	But few.		
<i>Ne-plus guère.</i>	Not much more.		
	Not many more.		
<i>Peu.</i>	Little.		

## REMARKS.

1. Much.  
Many.  
Very much.  
Very many.  
A great deal.  
A great many.
- May also be translated by *Bien*, with  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{du.} \\ \text{de la.} \\ \text{de l'.} \\ \text{des.} \end{array} \right\}$  before the noun.
- according to the gender and number of the noun: as,
- J'ai bien du sucre.*                      *Il a bien de l'eau.*  
*Tu as bien de la bière.*              *Nous avons bien des amis.*



2. Some more. }  
Still more. } Are rendered by *encore* with {  $\left. \begin{array}{l} du. \\ de la. \\ de l'. \\ des. \end{array} \right\}$  before the noun.  
Some yet. }

When the noun is omitted its place is supplied by the pronoun *en*.

Ex. *Avez-vous encore du drap?* *J'en ai encore*  
*A-t-il encore beaucoup d'objets?* *Il en a encore beaucoup.*  
*Les matelots ont-ils encore de la galette?* *Eux, ils n'en ont pas, mais nous, nous en avons encore.*

3. One more inkstand. *Encore un encrier.*  
No more inkstands. *Plus d'encriers.\**  
A few words more. *Encore quelques mots.*  
No more words. *Plus de mots.\**

4. Several. *Plusieurs.* (No *de*) *Plusieurs hommes.*  
Several (of them). *En-plusieurs.* *J'en ai plusieurs.*

5. Quite as much. }  
Quite as many. } *Tout autant* (*de* before the noun).  
Just as much. }

Quite as much—as. }  
Quite as many—as. } *Tout autant de—que de* (before noun).

Quite as much (of it). }  
Quite as many (of them). } *En—tout autant.*

Ex. *Avez-vous tout autant de pain que de beurre?* *J'en ai tout autant.*  
or, *J'ai tout autant de l'un que de l'autre.*

6. Not more than. } Ex. *Je n'en ai pas plus que vous.*  
*Pas plus que.* }  
Not more than }  
(with adj. of number). } Ex. *Je n'en ai pas plus de cinq.*  
*Pas plus de.* }

7. Something. *Quelque chose.* Require *de* before an adjective. *Avez-vous quelque chose de joli?*  
Any thing. *Ne-rien.* *Je n'ai rien de joli.*  
Nothing. *Que?* *Qu'avez-vous de joli?*  
What? *Quoi?* *Quoi de plus amusant?*  
Nobody. *Ne-personne.* *Je ne connais personne d'habile.*

# APPLICATION.

	QUESTIONS.	ANSWERS.
Enough.	Have you enough fresh butter for all the boarders?	We had enough this morning; we have not enough now. We shall have a great deal to-morrow evening.
Much. Very much. A great deal. Many. Very many.	Would not the captain have had a great many fine horses?	He would have had a great many (fine ones).

\* Used elliptically, as: *il n'y a plus d'encriers.* There are no more inkstands.

How much. How many.	How many ships has the merchant of whom you are speaking?	He has not many, he lost a great many this year.
So much. So many.	Why do you spend so much money?	I do not spend much, I never spend as much as you.
As much. As many.	Has the carpenter as much glue as sand-paper?	He has neither glue nor sand-paper. He will have a great deal to-morrow.
Less. Fewer.	Has your friend as many five-franc pieces as I, or has he fewer?	He has not as many as you, he has fewer; he has not as many as he had last month.
Too much. Too many.	Will there not be too much gold in the banks?	There will be enough, there will not be too much.
No more. Not any more. No longer any, No longer any more.	Are there not too many clerks in your brother's office; why does he do no more business?	There are no longer any clerks in his office. He does no more business. He does no more because he has lost too much money.
No. Not any. Not much. But little. Not many. But few.	Do you say that the captain of that schooner has no freight?	I say he has none, I say also he has but little ballast. Do you know where he can get a little? I believe nobody has much.
Much.	Had not those mechanics much credit formerly?	They had a great deal formerly; they have not much now.
Not much more. Not any more.	I have not much more letter-paper, how much have you?	I have but little; I have not much more than you.
Little. A little.	Have your painters much merit?	Our painters have little merit, our musicians have a great deal.
Some more. Still some. Some yet. Any more.	Has that physician any more patients?	He has some more: he has still ten or twelve. He had no more a month ago.
	Do you wish some more sugar in your tea?	I do not wish any sugar, I have enough. If you have any more milk, give me a little.
One more inkstand. No more inkstands. A few words more. No more words.	You can give me one more steel-pen, can you not?	Here are several, choose the best, and add a few more words to this letter for me.
	How does that letter begin?	It begins with these words: "No more money, no more friends."
Several.	Are there not several boxes of percussion-caps in the small drawer?	There are no more in the small one, there are several in the large one.

Quite as much. Quite as many. Just as much.	Have you quite as much powder as shot?	I have quite as much, and I have also quite as many caps as wads.
Quite as much, as. Quite as many, as.	Since you have as many powder-flasks as shot-bags, lend me one of each.	I have not quite as many; I can lend you one of each, however.
No more.	Have the masons any more lime?	They have no more: they tell me they have no more sand.
Not more than.	Did not you sell more umbrellas than I last summer?	I did not sell more than you; I sold, however, quite as many as you last month.
Something. Any thing. Nothing.	Did you not buy more than eighty last winter?	I sold more than ninety last winter: I did not buy any.
What?	Is there any thing useful in this work?	There is nothing useful in it, they say, however, there is something amusing in it.
Nobody.	What have you good in that basket?	I have a great many good things in it.
	What is there more entertaining than this story?	The one I read this morning is quite as entertaining.
	I am told* that you know nobody guilty in this affair.	I believe there is nobody guilty in it.
Neither, nor. <i>Ne,—ni.</i>	Is that man esteemed here? ( <i>Turn</i> "Does one esteem," &c.)	He is neither loved nor esteemed: he has neither friends nor enemies.
Nor, either. Nor, neither. <i>Ni,—ne.</i> <i>Ne,—ni.</i>	What is there more amusing than drawing; why do you not practise it more?	I like neither drawing nor music: I would study both, however, if we had as many good masters here as we had last year; but, my friend, neither drawing nor painting will make ( <i>rendre</i> ) me rich, nor you either.
No and not. <i>Non.</i> <i>Pas.</i>	Q. What did your master say a little while ago when he looked over your exercise? A. He said, "Not very good, not very good," and he passed on to another. Q. I see the clerk writing in the office; has he copied all the letters I gave him this afternoon? A. Not yet; when I gave them to him, he said, "No, sir, I will not copy them, I have no more steel pens." He is copying them now, however.	

\* The active form must be used in French, thus: (People tell me).  
*on.*

## ADVERBS OF QUANTITY AND NEGATIVE ADVERBS.

Enough.	No.	One more inkstand.
Much.	Not any.	No more inkstands.
Very much.	Not much.	A few words more.
A great deal.	But little.	No more words.
Many.	Not many.	Quite as much.
Very many.	But few.	Quite as many.
How much.	Not much more.	Quite as much as.
How many.	Not many more.	Not more than.
So much.	Little.	Not more than
So many.	A little.	(before a numeral).
As much.	Much.	Something.
As many.	Many.	Any thing.
Less.	Very much.	Nothing.
	Very many.	What?
	A great deal.	Nobody.
Too much.	Some more.	} <i>de</i> Require bef. adj.
Too many.	Still some.	
No more.	Some yet.	
Not any more.		
No longer any.	Several.	
No longer any more.		

## VOCABULARY.

Fresh butter,	<i>beurre frais.</i>	Musician,	<i>musicien.</i>
Boarder,	<i>pensionnaire, m. f.</i>	Physician,	<i>médecin.</i>
To-morrow morning,	<i>demain matin.</i>	Patient,	<i>malade, m. f.</i>
Last month,	<i>le mois dernier or passé.</i>	Merit,	<i>mérite, m.</i>
Last summer,	<i>l'été dernier.</i>	To borrow,	<i>emprunter.</i>
Last winter,	<i>l'hiver dernier.</i>	Sugar,	<i>sucre, m.</i>
Next week,	<i>la semaine prochaine.</i>	Tea,	<i>thé, m.</i>
This year,	<i>cette année-ci.</i>	Milk,	<i>lait, m.</i>
A month ago,	<i>il y a un mois.</i>	Steel-pen,	<i>plume métallique, f.</i>
Formerly,	<i>autrefois.</i>	Box of caps,	<i>boîte de capsules, f.</i>
Captain,	<i>capitaine.</i>	Shot,	<i>plomb, m.</i>
Ship,	<i>bâtiment, m., navire, m.</i>	Shot-bag,	<i>sac à plomb, m.</i>
Schooner,	<i>goëlette, f.</i>	Powder,	<i>poudre, f.</i>
Fret,	<i>fret, m. t. pr.</i>	Powder-flask,	<i>poire à poudre, f.</i>
Ballast,	<i>lest, m. t. pr.</i>	Wad,	<i>bourre, f.</i>
Carpenter,	<i>charpentier.</i>	Each,	<i>chaque.</i>
Glue,	<i>colle, f.</i>	Mason,	<i>maçon.</i>
Sand-paper,	<i>papier sablé, m.</i>	Sand,	<i>sable, m.</i>
To spend,	<i>dépenser.</i>	Lime,	<i>chaux, f.</i>
Five-franc piece,	<i>pièce de cinq francs, f.</i>	Umbrella,	<i>parapluie, m.</i>
Office,	<i>bureau, m.</i>	Basket,	<i>panier, m.</i>
Business,	<i>affaires, f. pl.</i>	Story,	<i>conte, m.</i>
Mechanic,	<i>artisan.</i>	Entertaining,	<i>agréable.</i>
Letter-paper,	<i>papier à lettres, m.</i>	Guilty,	<i>coupable.</i>
Painter,	<i>peintre.</i>	Affair,	<i>affaire, f.</i>





## REMARKS.

1. When several verbs are governed by the same conjunction, that conjunction is placed before the first verb only, and *que* is placed before each of the others, as:

*Pourvu qu'il vienne et qu'il vous voie.*

Provided he come and see you.

2. In French, the foregoing conjunctions serve to connect two verbs; one may be styled the *governing or leading verb*; the other, immediately after the conjunction, may be styled the *governed or subordinate verb*, and must be in the subjunctive, irrespective of the mood used in English.

The subordinate verb, however, is in the infinitive, when the action it expresses refers to and is performed by the nominative of the leading verb,—in other words, when the two verbs have the same nominative, as:

He did it for fear he should lose. *Il le fit de peur de perdre.*

## APPLICATION.

TABLE No. 15. CONJUNCTIONS REQUIRING THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

That.	I send you my book, in order that you may study it.
To the end that.	I gave him money, in order that he might buy books.
Unless.	She will not go unless you accompany her.
Before.	I shall go out before she goes away.
In case that. If.	If you had what you have not, would you be satisfied?
Although.	Although your brother is idle, he makes some progress.
Though.	That man looks sad, although he has a great deal of money, and receives encouraging letters.
For fear that.	Do not give him the knife, for fear he may cut himself.
Lest.	Shut the cage, lest the bird fly away.
Except.	Cannot that man remain until I sell the goods?
Till, until.	I cannot go to town until your brother goes (go) away.
Provided.	I shall love you provided you are (be) my friend.
Without.	He does it without your perceiving it.
Whether.	Whether you are right or wrong, you will never succeed in it.
	He did it for fear of losing.
	He did it for fear I should lose.
	Provided he come and see you.
	If he come and perceive you, he will speak to you and to your mother.
	Do not commence until your children go away.

He does not learn well, although he is diligent and takes pains.

He will not learn unless he be diligent and take pains.  
 I will not sing until your sister shall have gone away.  
 Very well, she says she will not go away until you sing.  
 I shall do it so that you may be satisfied.  
 I cannot study unless he send me my books.

TABLE XVI.

**Supplying Words in the Answer.**

By an examination of the elementary exercises appended to each Table, it will be observed that up to this period of instruction, the use of supplying words in the answers has been avoided. The Objective Pronouns being well understood by the pupil, the various modes of supplying in the answer are now explained by the instructor, and as a practical application of the principles to be observed, the Tables are reviewed, written out entirely from memory, and the answers construed with the appropriate supplying words indispensable in the French construction.

APPLICATION.

TABLE I. THE DEFINITE ARTICLE.

QUESTIONS.	ANSWERS.
Have you the master's book ?	I have not.
Did you give the house to the man ?	I did not; your father did.
Has he sent the cabbages to the boats ?	He has not.
Have the generals seen the arsenals ?	They have.
Will the children have the gloves ?	They will not; the servants will.
Did you not give the jewels to the marshals ?	I did not.
Was the clerk at the bank ?	He was not.

TABLE II. THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE.

Have I a handkerchief ?	You have one.
Hast thou a house ?	I have.
Has he a friend ?	He has.
Has she a card ?	She has.
Have we a carpet ?	You have.
Have they an admiral ?	They have.

X

WITH AN ADJECTIVE.

Have I a good handkerchief ?	You have.
Have I good handkerchiefs ?	You have.
Hast thou a large house ?	I have.
Hast thou large houses ?	I have.



TABLE II. THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE.

QUESTIONS.	ANSWERS.
Had we not given a table to the lady?	You had.
Have you read a novel?	I have.
Had they not sent a horse to the house?	They had.
Would you not have a house?	I would.
Have you thrown a stone in the well?	I have.

TABLE III. THE PARTITIVE ARTICLE.

Have they added wine to water?	They have not.
Would they not have given you wine and water?	They would not.
Have you had apples?	I have not.
Have you no bread?	I have none.
He has meat, has he not? ( <i>n'est-ce pas?</i> )	He has none now; he will have some presently.

TABLE III. THE PARTITIVE ARTICLE.

Have you any good wine?	I have none good.
Have you good or bad water?	I have some good; I never have any bad.
Will you have good books to-day?	I shall have good ones to-morrow.
Would he not have had excellent bread?	He would.
Has that young man any good horses?	He has not.

TABLE IV. DEMONSTRATIVE CONJUNCTIVE.

Is this wine old?	It is.
Is this woman sick?	She is not.
Is not this bird pretty?	It was; it is not now.
Are not those men's horses good?	They were; they are not now.
Is that glass broken?	It is.
Is not that bottle clean?	It is not.
Is that man's son tall?	He is not yet.

TABLE IV. DEMONSTRATIVE CONJUNCTIVE.

Are not these children obedient?	They are.
Have you given this money to that man?	I have.
Was not this bird in that cage?	It was not.
Were those men with these?	They were.
Are those generals prudent?	They always are.

TABLE V. THE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN DISJUNCTIVE.

Would you not have opened this door?	I would.
Have you shut that shutter?	I have not; I will presently.
Has she not broken that board?	She has not.

QUESTIONS.

ANSWERS.

Have you spoken of those merchants?	I have.
Have you spoken to those merchants?	I have not.

TABLE V. THE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN DISJUNCTIVE.

Have they given bread to those children?	They have.
Is that pen good?	It is.
Are those houses bad?	They are not.
Had you not that one?	I had not.
When will they have those; will they have them to-morrow?	They will; they will have these the day after to-morrow.

TABLE VI. THE DEMONSTRATIVES *Celui qui* AND *Celui que*.

Have you the one I had yesterday?	I have.
Had you spoken of the one he had this morning?	I had.
Have they spoken to the one I had seen yesterday?	They have.
Have you those that I had yesterday?	I have not.
Had not your brother spoken of those you had this morning?	He had.

TABLE IX. POSSESSIVE PRONOUN CONJUNCTIVE.

Are my clerks in my friend's store?	They were; they are not now.
Is my brother's inkstand on the table?	It was; it is not now.
Is not my sister's box in her drawer?	It was this morning.
Is his son sick?	He is not.
Are her sons sick?	They are.
Are his trunks in his carriage?	They were an hour ago.
Is her trunk in her carriage?	It is not.

TABLE IX. POSSESSIVE PRONOUN CONJUNCTIVE.

Is his door shut?	It is not: it will be presently.
Do you speak of her husband?	I do.
Do you speak of his wife?	I do not.
Have you spoken to his uncle?	I have not; I will presently.
Is our house large?	It is; it is larger than yours.
Are your rooms small?	They are; they are very small.
Is your cap in your box?	It is not now.
Are our guns clean?	They were; they are not now.

TABLE X. POSSESSIVE PRONOUN DISJUNCTIVE.

*Masculine Singular.*

Is mine good?	It was; it is not now.
---------------	------------------------

## QUESTIONS.

## ANSWERS.

Are you speaking of mine?  
Does he give water to mine?

I am.  
He does not.

*Masculine Plural.*

Are mine good?  
Are you speaking of mine?  
Does he give bread to mine?

They were; they are not now  
We are not.  
He does not.

## TABLE X. POSSESSIVE PRONOUN DISJUNCTIVE.

*Masculine Singular.*

Is thine here?  
Is he speaking of thine?  
Has he sent seed to thine?

It is.  
He is.  
He has.

*Masculine Plural.*

Are not thine here?  
Is she speaking of thine?  
Have they sent seed to thine?

They are not.  
She is not.  
They have.

## TABLE X. POSSESSIVE PRONOUN DISJUNCTIVE.

*Feminine Singular.*

Was his here yesterday?  
Was I speaking of his?  
Have you given water to his?

It was not.  
You were.  
I have not; I will soon.

*Masculine  
Feminine Plural.*

Were his here this morning?  
Was he speaking of his?  
Have they given hay to his?

They were.  
He was not.  
Not yet; they will soon.

## TABLE X. POSSESSIVE PRONOUN DISJUNCTIVE.

*Feminine  
Masculine Singular.*

Is hers in the parlor?  
Shall I speak of hers?  
Has he given a book to hers?

It was; it is not now.  
Do not.  
Not yet; he will presently.

*Feminine  
Masculine Plural.*

Are hers in the drawer?  
Have you spoken of hers?  
Have you spoken to hers?

They were this morning.  
I have not.  
Not yet; I will presently.

## TABLE X. POSSESSIVE PRONOUN DISJUNCTIVE.

*Masculine Singular.*

Is not ours there?

I believe it is.

QUESTIONS.

ANSWERS.

Were you speaking of ours?

I was.

Does he give money to ours?

He does sometimes.

*Masculine Plural.*

Are not ours on the desk?

They are.

Would you speak of ours?

I would.

Do they give money to ours?

They do sometimes.

TABLE X. POSSESSIVE PRONOUN DISJUNCTIVE.

*Masculine Singular.*

Is yours sold?

Not yet; it will be to-morrow.

Has he sold a little of yours?

He has.

Have you added water to yours?

I have.

*Masculine Plural.*

Are yours sold?

They are.

Has he sold two of yours?

He has sold one.

Have you added wine to yours?

I have; I shall add more presently.

TABLE X. POSSESSIVE PRONOUN DISJUNCTIVE.

*Feminine Singular.*

Have you seen theirs?

I have not.

Do you speak of theirs?

I never do.

Shall I give hay to theirs?

Do.

*Feminine Plural.*

Were theirs good?

They were; they are not now

Shall I speak of theirs?

Do not.

Give water to theirs.

I have already.

TABLE XII. PERSONAL PRONOUNS, NOMINATIVE AND OBJECTIVE.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

To breakfast. You are breakfasting, are you not?  
(*n'est-ce pas?*)

I am not; I am dining.

To dine. Thou wast dining, wast thou not?

Yes, I was; your brother was also.

To walk. She will walk, will she not?

She will with crutches.

To talk. People would talk, would they not?

They would, a great deal.

To try. They have tried, have they not?

They have, twice.

To finish. They had finished, had they not?

They had not at one o'clock.

TABLE XII. PERSONAL PRONOUNS, NOMINATIVE AND OBJECTIVE.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

To succeed. I always succeed, do I not?

You seldom do.

To act. Thou wast acting for him, wast thou not?

I was.

To establish. He established a store, did he not?

He did.

	QUESTIONS.	ANSWERS.
To perish.	She will perish, will she not?	She will not.
To obey.	Would not people obey?	They would not.
To applaud.	{ They would have applauded, would they not?	They would.

TABLE XII. PERSONAL PRONOUNS, NOMINATIVE AND OBJECTIVE.

## THIRD CONJUGATION.

To deceive.	You deceive everybody, do you not?	I do.
To receive.	{ Thou wast receiving money, wast thou not?	I was.
To owe.	{ He owed money to everybody, did he not?	He did.
To receive.	{ People would receive the news to-morrow, would they not?	They would.
To receive.	{ They have received the goods, have they not?	They have not.

TABLE XII. PERSONAL PRONOUNS, NOMINATIVE AND OBJECTIVE.

## FOURTH CONJUGATION.

To hear.	I hear the man, do I not?	You do.
To wait.	Thou wast waiting, wast thou not?	I was not.
To answer.	{ He answered the letters last year, did he not? (à)	No, he did not.
To sell.	She will sell her goods, will she not?	Yes, she will.
To descend.	Will people descend to those means?	No, they will not.
To defend.	{ The soldiers would defend the fort, would they not?	They would.

TABLE XII. PERSONAL PRONOUNS, NOMINATIVE AND OBJECTIVE.

Will he not give me to another master?	He will next year.
Will he not sell thee soon?	He will next week.
He has sold it, has he not?	He has not, he never will.
Will they not take us to the house?	They will.
Was she not giving it to her mistress?	She was.
You had them in your pocket, had you not?	I had; I had some in my desk also.

TABLE XII. PERSONAL PRONOUNS, NOMINATIVE AND OBJECTIVE.

He hears me, does he not?	He does not.
Do I not hear thee?	You do not now.
He receives her in the morning, does he not? (le matin)	He never does in the morning.
Would you not have sold it dear?	I would.
You would defend them, would you not?	We always should.
Does she hear him?	She does, up stairs. (en haut.)
They have received them, have they not?	They have down stairs. (en bas.)

R

TABLE XII. PERSONAL PRONOUNS, NOMINATIVE AND OBJECTIVE.

QUESTIONS.	ANSWERS.
He will give me the best books, will he not?	He will.
He will sell the best books to thee, will he not?	He will not.
Shall I speak to him to-morrow?	Do.
You spoke to her yesterday, did you not?	I did.
You gave her lessons last year, did you not?	I did; I shall this year also.
He gives us water, does he not?	He does sometimes.
We sell you wine, don't we?	You never do.

TABLE XII. PERSONAL PRONOUNS, NOMINATIVE AND OBJECTIVE.

Does she not sell him good cloth?	She sometimes does.
Would he not have sold them shoes and stockings?	He would not.
Had you not lent her several old books?	I had.
When will you lend her money?	I have none to lend. a
When will they sell him goods?	They have none to sell. a

TABLE XII. PERSONAL PRONOUNS, NOMINATIVE AND OBJECTIVE.

Do not give her to another master.	I will not.
Do not send them to the store.	I have already.
Do not observe us.	I will not.
Sell me a good horse.	I will.
Apply this observation to yourself.	I will.
Give him a better pen.	I will not give him a bad one.
Do not give him a bad pen.	I have already given him a bad one.
Show them the black coats.	I will, and the blue also.

TABLE XII. PERSONAL PRONOUNS, NOMINATIVE AND OBJECTIVE.

Sell me to another master.	I will not.
Render thyself capable.	I will.
Give it to the girl.	I will.
Give her to a better mistress.	I will.
Observe us.	We do.
Render yourself skilful.	I have already.
Send them to the store.	We have already.
Carry them to the bank.	I have already.
Show them to the women.	We have already.
Do not sell me to another.	I will not.



TABLE XII. PERSONAL PRONOUNS, NOMINATIVE AND OBJECTIVE.

Sell her the sweet oranges.	I will.
Do not sell her the sour ones.	I will not.
Bring her the best oranges.	I have already.
Do not bring her the best.	I will not.
Give us money.	I will.
Do not give us any.	I will not.
Give yourself trouble. ( <i>peine, f.</i> )	I will.
Show them the gardens.	I will presently. ( <i>tout à l'heure.</i> )
Send them the flowers.	I will this evening.

TABLE XII. PERSONAL PRONOUNS, NOMINATIVE AND OBJECTIVE.

Do not sell her the sweet oranges.	I will not.
Do not bring her the sour apples.	We will not.
Do not give us any trouble.	Why should I?
Do not show them your gardens.	Why should I not?
Do not send them the pretty flowers.	Why should we not?



## TABLE XVII.

## The Numeral Adjectives and their Pronunciation.

The pronunciation of French Numeral Adjectives being very arbitrary, this table has been framed for the purpose of familiarizing the student with a difficulty not satisfactorily explained in any grammar for the use of English pupils.

THE CARDINAL NUMBERS.		PRONUNCIATION OF THE CARDINAL NUMBERS.						THE CARDINAL NUMBERS.	
		When not followed by a noun or adjective.	Before a Noun or Adjective commencing with a						
			Isolated.						
1	{ un. une.	un (nasal) u-ne.	un u-ne	couteau. fourchette.	un n' un'	oiseau, m. abeille, f.	21	vingt-un.	
2	deux.	deu.	deu	tasses.	deuz	éponges.	22	vingt-deux.	
3	trois.	troi.	troi	soucoupes.	troiz	hivers.	23	vingt-trois.	
4	quatre.	qua-tre.	qua-tre	cuillères.	quatr'	îles.	24	vingt-quatre.	
5	cinq.	Finals pronounced. cink. siss. set. huit. neuf. diss.	cin	carafes.	Finals pronounced. cink siz set huit neuv diz	arbres.	25	vingt-cinq.	
6	six.		si	verres.		habits.	26	vingt-six.	
7	sept.		sé	rasoirs.		individus.	27	vingt-sept.	
8	huit.		hui	miroirs.		inondations.	28	vingt-huit.	
9	neuf.		neu	gants.		hommes.	29	vingt-neuf.	
10	dix.	di	homards.	uniformes.	The g of vingt is dropped, but the t is sounded from 21 to 29.				
11	onze.*	onze.	onze	paysans.	onz'	ans.	30	trente.	
12	douze.	douze.	douze	pas.	douz'	hôpitaux.	31	trente-un, &c.	
13	treize.	treize.	treize	voitures.	treiz'	objets.	40	quarante.	
14	quatorze.	quatorze.	quatorze	chemins.	quatorz'	étoiles.	41	quarante-un, &c.	
15	quinze.	quinze.	quinze	voiles.	quinz'	endroits.			
16	seize.	seize.	seize	navires.	seiz'	œufs.			
17	dix-sept.	diss-set.	diss-sé	pelles.	diss-set	oies.	50	cinquante.	
18	dix-huit.	di-zuit.	di-zui	balais.	di-zuit	assiettes.	51	cinquante-un, &c.	
19	dix-neuf.	diz-neuf.	diz-neu	malles.	diz-neuv	amis.	60	soixante.	
20	vingt.	vin.	vin	plumes.	vint	églises.	61	soixante-un, &c.	
The x of soixante pronounced as ss.									

\* Monosyllables, such as *le, la, de, que*, which undergo elision before words commencing with a vowel or h mute, undergo none before *onze*; nor must any final consonant be carried to this word in pronunciation. This rule applies to *onzième*, 11th.

## EXAMPLES.

*Le onze de ce cadran est effacé.*

The eleven on that dial-plate is effaced.

*La onzième lettre est mal formée.*

The eleventh letter is badly formed.

*Les onze pommes étaient bonnes.*

The eleven apples were good.

*Je parle de onze soldats.*

I speak of eleven soldiers.

*Je parle des onze officiers.*

I speak of the eleven officers.

*Vous n'avez que onze francs.*

*You have but eleven francs.*

*Nous étions onze à table.*

*We were eleven at table.*

*Il a deux onzièmes dans cette affaire.*

*He has two elevenths in that affair.*

*N'aurez-vous pas onze cents francs le onze du mois ?*

*Will you not have eleven hundred francs on the eleventh of the month ?*

## 70

70	<i>soixante-dix.</i>	} The <i>x</i> of <i>soixante</i> as <i>ss</i> , and the second number as indicated in table of pronunciation.
71	<i>soixante-onze.</i>	
72	<i>soixante-douze.</i>	
73	<i>soixante-treize.</i>	
74	<i>soixante-quatorze.</i>	
75	<i>soixante-quinze.</i>	
76	<i>soixante-seize.</i>	
77	<i>soixante-dix-sept.</i>	
78	<i>soixante-dix-huit.</i>	
79	<i>soixante-dix-neuf.</i>	

## BEFORE A CONSONANT. BEFORE A VOWEL.

<i>lieutenants.</i>	<i>étendards. m.</i>
<i>caporaux.</i>	<i>escadrons. m.</i>
<i>sergents.</i>	<i>aides de camp.</i>
<i>tambours.</i>	<i>affûts. m.</i>
<i>dragons.</i>	<i>ordres. m.</i>
<i>chasseurs.</i>	<i>amiraux.</i>
<i>cuirassiers.</i>	<i>ancres. f.</i>
<i>hussards.</i>	<i>arsenaux. m.</i>
<i>colonels.</i>	<i>épiciers.</i>
<i>capitaines.</i>	<i>ébénistes.</i>

## 80

80	<i>quatre-vingt. s.*</i>	} The <i>gt</i> of <i>vingt</i> silent throughout, and the other numbers as in table of pronunciation.
81	<i>quatre-vingt-un.</i>	
82	<i>quatre-vingt-deux.</i>	
83	<i>quatre-vingt-trois.</i>	
84	<i>quatre-vingt-quatre.</i>	
85	<i>quatre-vingt-cinq.</i>	
86	<i>quatre-vingt-six.</i>	
87	<i>quatre-vingt-sept.</i>	
88	<i>quatre-vingt-huit.</i>	
89	<i>quatre-vingt-neuf.</i>	

<i>généraux.</i>	<i>orfèvres.</i>
<i>majors.</i>	<i>ouvriers.</i>
<i>fusils. m.</i>	<i>imprimeurs.</i>
<i>canons. m.</i>	<i>acteurs.</i>
<i>pistolets. m.</i>	<i>actrices.</i>
<i>balles. f.</i>	<i>avocats.</i>
<i>boulets. m.</i>	<i>Anglais.</i>
<i>baïonnettes. f.</i>	<i>Anglaises.</i>
<i>sabres. m.</i>	<i>Américains.</i>
<i>grenadiers.</i>	<i>Américaines.</i>

## 90

90	<i>quatre-vingt-dix</i>	} The <i>gt</i> of <i>vingt</i> silent throughout, the rest as in table of pronunciation.
91	<i>quatre-vingt-onze.</i>	
92	<i>quatre-vingt-douze.</i>	
93	<i>quatre-vingt-treize.</i>	
94	<i>quatre-vingt-quatorze.</i>	
95	<i>quatre-vingt-quinze.</i>	
96	<i>quatre-vingt-seize.</i>	
97	<i>quatre-vingt-dix-sept.</i>	
98	<i>quatre-vingt-dix-huit.</i>	
99	<i>quatre-vingt-dix-neuf.</i>	

<i>lanciers.</i>	<i>Allemands.</i>
<i>sapeurs.</i>	<i>Allemandes.</i>
<i>cavaliers.</i>	<i>Espagnols.</i>
<i>fantassins.</i>	<i>Espagnoles.</i>
<i>musiciens.</i>	<i>Ecossais.</i>
<i>fifres.</i>	<i>Ecossaises.</i>
<i>tirailleurs.</i>	<i>Italiens. Italiennes.</i>
<i>pelotons. m.</i>	<i>Indiens.</i>
<i>régiments. m.</i>	<i>Européens.</i>
<i>compagnies. f.</i>	<i>Européennes.</i>

100	<i>cent.</i>	200	<i>Deux cent.</i>	300	<i>trois cent s.†</i>
101	<i>cent un.</i>		<i>Deux cents.†</i>	400	<i>quatre cent s.</i>
102	<i>cent deux</i>	201	<i>deux cent un.</i>	500	<i>cinq cent s.</i>
103	<i>cent trois.</i>	202	<i>deux cent deux.</i>	600	<i>six cent s.</i>

\* *Vingt* in *quatre-vingt* takes an *s* when followed by a noun. In pronunciation, the letters *gt* remain silent when *quatre-vingts* is pronounced alone, at the end of a sentence, or before a noun beginning with a consonant. Before a noun beginning with a vowel or *h* mute, the final *s* is carried to the vowel; the letters *gt* still remaining silent, as: *Rendez-lui ses quatre-vingts écus.*

† As explained hereafter.

104	<i>cent quatre.</i>	203	<i>deux cent trois.</i>	700	<i>sept cent s.</i>
105	<i>cent cinq.</i>	204	<i>deux cent quatre.</i>	800	<i>huit cent s.</i>
106	<i>cent six, &amp;c.</i>	205	<i>deux cent cinq, &amp;c.</i>	900	<i>neuf cent s.</i>
1000	<i>mille.</i>	2000	<i>deux mille.</i>	5000	<i>cinq mille. million s.</i>
1001	<i>mille un.</i>	3000	<i>trois mille.</i>	6000	<i>six mille. billion s.</i>
1002	<i>mille deux, &amp;c.</i>	4000	<i>quatre mille.</i>	7000	<i>sept mille, &amp;c. trillion s.</i>

PRONUNCIATION OF CENT.

CENT— <i>t</i> SILENT.	CENT— <i>t</i> SILENT.	CENT— <i>i</i> PRONOUNCED.
1. Isolated. 2. When not followed by a noun or adjective. 3. At the end of a sentence. 4. Before another number.	Before a noun or adjective commencing with a consonant, or <i>h</i> aspirated.	Before a noun or adjective commencing with a vowel, or <i>h</i> mute.
Ex. <i>Ne répétez pas cent et cent fois la même chose. Prêtez-m'en cent. J'en ai cent un.</i>	<i>Envoyez-moi cent pommiers. Vendez-lui cent beaux rosiers. Elles ont visité cent ha-meaux.</i>	<i>Le jardinier veut planter cent arbres. Le onzième régiment a perdu cent hommes. L'armée possède cent intrépides chefs.</i>

PRONUNCIATION OF CENTS.

CENTS— <i>ts</i> SILENT.	CENTS— <i>ts</i> SILENT.	CENT <sup>S</sup> $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} t \text{ SILENT, AND THE} \\ s \text{ CONNECTED AS Z.} \end{array} \right.$
1. When not followed by a noun or adjective. 2. At the end of a sentence. 3. Isolated.	Before a noun or adjective commencing with a consonant, or <i>h</i> aspirated.	Before a noun or adjective commencing with a vowel, or <i>h</i> mute.
Ex. <i>Paul a planté de beaux pommiers, il en aura plus de deux cents au bout de trois ans. Moi, j'en ai neuf cents.</i>	<i>Nous avons porté sept cents francs à la banque de France. Le quincaillier vous vendra deux cents haches et huit cents bonnes bèches.</i>	<i>Nous aurions tué deux cents alouettes si nous avions eu de la poudre et du plomb. Pourquoi ne vendez-vous pas vos six mille neuf cents anciens manuscrits?</i>

USE OF HYPHEN.

All adjectives of number are connected by hyphens, from *dix-sept* to *quatre-vingt-dix-neuf*, without exception, whether used alone or connected with higher numbers. In other combinations the hyphen is omitted.

UN, VINGT, AND CENT (WHEN DECLINABLE).

REMARKS.

Cardinal numbers are indeclinable, except *un*, *quatre-vingt* and *cent*.  
*Un* makes *une* in the feminine.

*Vingt* (in *quatre-vingt*) and *cent* take the plural *s*, either when they occur immediately before a substantive, or when they refer to one previously mentioned or immediately understood after them, provided they be preceded by another number multiplying them.

## APPLICATION.

Q. <i>Avez-vous deux livres de sucre, ou n'en avez-vous qu'une ?</i>	Q. Have you two pounds of sugar, or have you but one ?
A. <i>Je n'en ai qu'une.</i>	A. I have but one.
<i>Quatre-vingts violons et quatre-vingts archets.</i>	Eighty violins and eighty bows.
<i>Deux cents officiers et neuf cents soldats.</i>	200 officers and 900 soldiers.
Q. <i>Avait-il trois cents estampes ?</i>	Q. Had they 300 prints ?
A. <i>Ils n'en avaient que quatre-vingts.</i>	A. They had but eighty.
Q. <i>Votre cousine en a-t-elle deux cents ?</i>	Q. Has your cousin 200 ?
A. <i>Elle en a quatre ou cinq cents.</i>	A. She has four or five hundred.
<i>Nous ne sommes que quatre-vingts à présent, mais nous serons bientôt deux cents (personnes understood).</i>	We are but eighty now, but shall soon be 200 (persons).

But we should write *nous étions cent*. We were one hundred (*persons*), and not *cents*; because in this case only one hundred is mentioned.

## NOT DECLINABLE.

*Quatre-vingt* and *cent*, when immediately followed by another number, do not take the plural *s*: as,

*Trois cent quatre-vingt-cinq dollars.* 385 dollars.

*Vingt* and *cent*, although multiplied by another number, do not take the plural *s* in dates, for the reason that in such cases they refer to a noun singular, and are used in the place of the ordinal numbers, as in the next example, *cent* for *centième* and *quatre-vingt* for *quatre-vingtième*.

*L'an sept cent quatre-vingt.* In the year 780.

*Charlemagne fut proclamé Empereur, l'an huit cent.*

Charlemagne was proclaimed Emperor in 800, in the year 800.

*Mil* instead of *Mille*.

*Mille* is curtailed into *Mil* in the computation of years of the Christian era.

Ex. <i>Mil huit cent cinquante-huit, or</i>	} Eighteen hundred and fifty-eight.
<i>Dix-huit cent cinquante-huit.</i>	

## A HUNDRED—ONE HUNDRED, &amp;c.

*Un* is not prefixed to *cent* and *mille*; thus we translate,

A hundred.	} by <i>cent</i> .	A hundred brushes.	<i>cent brosses.</i>
One hundred.		One hundred combs.	<i>cent peignes.</i>
A thousand.	} by <i>mille</i> .	A thousand miles.	<i>mille milles.</i>
One thousand.		One thousand leagues.	<i>mille lieues.</i>

AND, NOT EXPRESSED.

The English conjunction *and*, used with 100 and 1,000, is not expressed in French with the cardinal numbers: as,

*Cent vingt-une caisses, contenant dix mille* One hundred and twenty-one boxes, containing ten thousand and ten volumes.  
*dix volumes.*

Say and write, nevertheless, *mille et un*, and not *mille un*, 1001.

ELEVEN HUNDRED, TWELVE HUNDRED, &c.

It is good French to say *onze cent, douze cent, &c.*, as far as *dix-neuf cent*; but after that, the words *deux mille* must be used to express two thousand, &c. *Dix cent* cannot be substituted for *mille*.

NUMBERS NOT TO BE REVERSED.

The numbers cannot be reversed. Five and twenty must be translated into French by *vingt-cinq*.

MILLION.

*Million* is followed by the preposition *de*, of, as in English. It takes *s* in the plural, as: *cinq millions de francs*.

Of the Ordinal Numbers.

First.	<i>premier.</i>	m. s.	{	REMARK 1. <i>Premier</i> is only made use of for the very first of a series, and <i>unième</i> after another number: as, Twenty-first. <i>Vingt-unième.</i> Thirty-first. <i>Trente-unième.</i>
	<i>première.</i>	f. s.		
	<i>premiers.</i>	m. pl.		
	<i>premières.</i>	f. pl.		
	<i>unième.</i>			

Second.	<i>second.*</i>	m. s.	{	REMARK 2. <i>Second</i> is only used for the second of a series. <i>Deuxième</i> is also used in such cases, but it is the only one of the two that can succeed another number: as, Thirty-second. <i>Trente-deuxième.</i> Forty-second. <i>Quarante-deuxième.</i>
	<i>seconde.</i>	f. s.		
	<i>seconds.</i>	m. pl.		
	<i>secondes.</i>	f. pl.		

Third.	<i>troisième.</i>		{	REMARK 3. It will be very easy now to proceed with the Ordinal Numbers, as the rest are formed from the cardinal by adding <i>ième</i> ; and if the cardinal number ends in <i>e</i> mute, that <i>e</i> is cut off and <i>ième</i> added to the preceding consonant. REMARK 4. Fifth and Ninth make <i>cinquième</i> and <i>neuvième</i> , as in the margin. REMARK 5. The Ordinal Numbers, with the exception of <i>premier</i> and <i>second</i> , are of both genders, and take an <i>s</i> in the plural.
Fourth.	<i>quatrième.</i>			
Fifth.	<i>cinquième.</i>			
Sixth.	<i>sixième.</i>			
Seventh.	<i>septième.</i>			
Eighth.	<i>huitième.</i>			
Ninth.	<i>neuvième.</i>			
Tenth.	<i>dixième.</i>			
Eleventh.	<i>onzième.</i>			
Twelfth.	<i>douzième.</i>			
Thirteenth.	<i>treizième.</i>			

The pronunciation of the Cardinal Numbers will serve as a key to that of the Ordinal Numbers, and for a complete list of the latter see Lévizac's Grammar, page 58.

\* The *c* in *second* is pronounced as a *g*.



## OBSERVATION.

In the application of the preceding Table, we call the attention of the student to the use of the pronoun *en* entering into the construction of the French phrase. Place must be supplied by *y*. The attention of the learner is likewise directed to the peculiar mode of rendering the past tense. The following examples will serve as an illustration.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| Q. Did you not lend him two books this morning? | <i>Né lui avez-vous pas prêté deux livres ce matin?</i> |
| A. I lent him five.                             | <i>Je lui en ai prêté cinq.</i>                         |
| Q. Did you not put nine bills in the drawer?    | <i>N'avez-vous pas mis neuf billets dans le tiroir?</i> |
| A. I put ten in it.                             | <i>J'y en ai mis dix.</i>                               |

## APPLICATION.

## QUESTIONS.

## ANSWERS.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. How many peaches have you?   | I have but one; my brother has two and my sister has four or five.   |
| 2. What did you put in the large basket this morning?                       | I put in it one ham, two loaves, three forks, four knives, and five cups.  |
| 3. What did you put in the small one?                                       | I put in it one towel, two sponges, three oranges, and a case containing four pins and five needles.   |
| 4. Did your brother and your cousin cut down many trees this morning?       | My brother cut down six, my cousin cut down seven, the servant who helped us cut down eight, I cut down nine, and the coachman ten.                                  |
| 5. What trees did you cut down?   | We cut down six birch, seven cedar, eight oak, nine ash, and ten pine trees.   |
| 6. Did you cut down any others?   | We cut down, moreover, six elm, seven maple, eight yew, nine alder, and ten orange trees.  |
| 7. Did not your clerk give ten dollars to each workman to-day?              | He gave more than ten to each; to the mason he gave eleven, to the carpenter twelve, to the blacksmith thirteen, to the plumber fourteen, and to the slater fifteen. |
| 8. What did Robert take out of his trunk, when he opened it this afternoon? | He took out of it eleven copy-books, twelve quills, thirteen pencils, fourteen penknives, and fifteen sticks of sealing wax.   |
| 9. Did you see him put any thing into it?                                   | I saw him put into it sixteen inkstands, twelve sketches, thirteen epaulets, fourteen swords, and fifteen matches.   |

For exercise at the black-board, the remaining cardinal numbers will be combined with the words of the next vocabulary.

N. It will be observed that the first answer upon the slips contains numbers not connected with nouns; the second, numbers connected with nouns beginning with a consonant, and the third, numbers connected with nouns beginning with a vowel. In this manner the three phases of pronunciation are fully exemplified at the black-board.

VOCABULARY.

Dial-plate,	<i>cadran, m.</i>	Slater,	<i>couvreur.</i>
Letter,	<i>lettre, f.</i>	Cabinet-maker,	<i>ébéniste.</i>
Affair,	<i>affaire, f.</i>	Printer,	<i>imprimeur.</i>
Peach,	<i>pêche, f.</i>	Grocer,	<i>épicier.</i>
Basket,	<i>panier, m.</i>	Clerk,	<i>commis.</i>
Ham,	<i>jambon, m.</i>	Emperor,	<i>empereur.</i>
Fork,	<i>fourchette, f.</i>	General,	<i>général.</i>
Knife,	<i>couteau, m.</i>	Major,	<i>major.</i>
Cup,	<i>tasse, f.</i>	Aid,	<i>aide de camp.</i>
Towel,	<i>essuie-main, m.</i>	Captain,	<i>capitaine.</i>
Sponge,	<i>éponge, m.</i>	Lieutenant,	<i>lieutenant.</i>
Case,	<i>étui, m.</i>	Sergeant,	<i>sergent.</i>
Needle-case,	<i>étui à aiguilles, m.</i>	Corporal,	<i>caporal.</i>
Pincushion,	<i>pelote, f.</i>	Drummer,	<i>tambour.</i>
Servant,	<i>domestique, m. f.</i>	National Guard,	<i>garde nationale.</i>
Coachman,	<i>cocher.</i>	Author,	<i>auteur.</i>
Birch-tree,	<i>bouleau, m.</i>	Trunk,	<i>malle, f.</i>
Cedar,	<i>cèdre, m.</i>	Copy-book,	<i>cahier, m.</i>
Oak,	<i>chêne, m.</i>	Pen,	<i>plume, f.</i>
Ash,	<i>frêne, m.</i>	Pencil,	<i>crayon, m.</i>
Pine,	<i>pin, m.</i>	Penknife,	<i>canif, m.</i>
Elm,	<i>orme, m.</i>	Stick of sealing wax,	<i>bâton de cire à cacheter.</i>
Maple,	<i>érable, m.</i>	Inkstand,	<i>encrier, m.</i>
Yew,	<i>if, m.</i>	Sketch,	<i>esquisse, f.</i>
Alder,	<i>aune, m.</i>	Epaulet,	<i>épaulette, f.</i>
Orange-tree,	<i>oranger, m.</i>	Sword,	<i>épée.</i>
Flower,	<i>fleur, f.</i>	Match,	<i>allumette, f.</i>
Kind,	<i>espèce, f.</i>	Arm,	<i>arme, f.</i>
Dahlia,	<i>dahlia, m.</i>	Article,	<i>objet, m.</i>
Rose,	<i>rose, f.</i>	Squadron,	<i>escadron, m.</i>
Violet,	<i>violette, f.</i>	Standard,	<i>étendard, m.</i>
Daisy,	<i>marguerite, f.</i>	Gun-carriage,	<i>affût, m.</i>
Tulip,	<i>tulipe, f.</i>	Musket,	<i>fusil, m.</i>
Amaranth,	<i>amarante, f.</i>	Bayonet,	<i>baïonnette, f.</i>
Heliotrope,	<i>héliotrope, m.</i>	Sabre,	<i>sabre, m.</i>
Peter,	<i>Pierre.</i>	Brother-in-law,	<i>beau-frère, m.</i>
Julia,	<i>Julie.</i>	Sister-in-law,	<i>belle-sœur.</i>
John,	<i>Jean.</i>	Aunt,	<i>tante.</i>
Mary,	<i>Marie.</i>	Volume,	<i>volume, m.</i>
Paul,	<i>Paul.</i>	Pamphlet,	<i>brochure, f.</i>
Mason,	<i>maçon.</i>	Book of travels,	<i>livre de voyages, m.</i>
Carpenter,	<i>charpentier.</i>	Sum,	<i>somme, f.</i>
Blacksmith,	<i>forgeron.</i>	Month,	<i>mois, m.</i>
Plumber,	<i>plombier.</i>		



Print,	<i>estampe, f.</i>	Sometimes,	<i>quelquefois.</i>
Colored,	<i>enluminé.</i>	As many as,	<i>jusqu'à.</i>
Purse,	<i>bourse, f.</i>	Yesterday evening,	<i>hier soir.</i>
Mantel-piece,	<i>cheminée.</i>	To-morrow even-	} <i>demain soir.</i>
Arctic regions,	<i>régions arctiques.</i>	ing,	
Cholera,	<i>choléra, m.</i>	The day before	} <i>avant hier.</i>
Profit,	<i>benefice, m.</i>	yesterday,	
Sugar,	<i>sucré, m.</i>	Afternoon,	<i>après-midi, f.</i>
Violin,	<i>violon, m.</i>	Next month,	<i>le mois prochain.</i>
Bow,	<i>archet, m.</i>	In the course of	} <i>dans le courant de</i>
First string,	<i>chanterelle, f.</i>	the year,	
Safe,	<i>coffre de sûreté, m.</i>	Weekly part,	<i>livraison hebdomadaire</i>
Cents,	<i>cents.</i>	In all,	<i>en tout.</i>
Corsican,	<i>Corse.</i>	Besides,	<i>outré.</i>
St. Helena,	<i>Sainte Hélène.</i>	Also,	<i>aussi.</i>
Comb,	<i>peigne, m.</i>	VERBS.	
Brush,	<i>brosse, f.</i>		
Fan,	<i>éventail, m.</i>	To cut,	<i>couper.</i>
Courier,	<i>courrier.</i>	To help,	<i>aider.</i>
Mile,	<i>mille, m.</i>	To pay out,	<i>compter.</i>
Partner,	<i>associé.</i>	To issue,	<i>distribuer.</i>
Inhabitant,	<i>habitant, m.</i>	To have just,	<i>venir de.</i>
		To efface,	<i>effacer.</i>
There they are,	<i>les voilà.</i>	To add,	<i>ajouter.</i>
Here they are,	<i>les voici.</i>	To crown,	<i>couronner.</i>
Moreover,	<i>encore.</i>	To have to,	<i>avoir à.</i>
Yes we did,	<i>si fait.</i>	To lose,	<i>perdre.</i>
Something,	<i>quelque chose.</i>	To include,	<i>comprendre.</i>
Viz., namely,	<i>savoir.</i>	To contain,	<i>renfermer.</i>

## NO. XVIII.

USE OF ***Y avoir***, THERE TO BE, IN PHRASES RELATING TO { TIME AND DISTANCE.

## TIME.

The different tenses of the verb *to be*, accompanied by the adverb *there*, are expressed in French by those of *y avoir*, as:

There is a one-dollar note on the mantel-piece. *Il y a un billet d'un dollar sur la cheminée.*

There are two two-dollar notes in my vest-pocket. *Il y a deux billets de deux dollars dans la poche de mon gilet.*

In these and analogous cases, the verb must be used in the singular in French, whether it be in the singular or plural in English; but the impersonal *il y a*, cannot be rendered into English by *there is*, *there are*, when it is used in reply to the question: How long is it since? which question must itself be rendered by: *Combien de temps y a-t-il que, &c.?* or, *Combien y a-t-il que, &c.?*

How long is it since you breakfasted? *Combien y a-t-il que vous avez déjeuné?*

It is long since, &c., is therefore rendered by, *Il y a longtemps que, &c.*

## EXAMPLES.

It is long since I dined.

*Il y a longtemps que j'ai dîné.*

It is a great while since.

*Il y a très longtemps.*

It is a short time since.	<i>Il y a peu de temps.</i>
It is a year since.	<i>Il y a un an.</i>
It is only a year since.	<i>Il n'y a qu'un an.</i>
It is more than a year since.	<i>Il y a plus d'un an.</i>
It is hardly six months since.	<i>Il y a à peine six mois.</i>

AGO.

A week ago.	} <i>Il y a huit jours.</i>
A week since.	
A few hours ago.	} <i>Il y a quelques heures.</i>
These few hours.	
Half an hour ago.	} <i>Il y a une demi-heure.</i>
This half hour.	
Two years ago.	} <i>Il y a deux ans.</i>
These two years.	
A fortnight ago.	<i>Il y a quinze jours.</i>

USE OF **Y avoir**.

In English, the state of existence or of action, when in its duration, is always expressed in the perfect tense, while in French it is expressed by the present tense, in phrases of the following nature:

Have you been long in France? *Y a-t-il longtemps que vous êtes en France?*

For: Have you been long in France? implies that you are still there; say then in French, *que vous êtes*, and not *que vous avez été*, which would mean that you are no longer at the place.

EXAMPLES.

He has been in Paris these three years.	} <i>Il y a trois ans qu'il est à Paris.</i>
I have been working here these two years.	
How long have you had that horse?	} <i>Combien y a-t-il que vous avez ce cheval-là?</i>

**Depuis quand?**

How long? (since what time?) may also be rendered by *depuis quand* (since when).

EXAMPLES.

Q. How long has he been here?	<i>Depuis quand est-il ici?</i>
A. These two days.	<i>Depuis deux jours.</i>
Q. How long have you been reading?	<i>Depuis quand lisez-vous?</i>
A. This hour and a half.	<i>Depuis une heure et demie.</i>

USE OF **Y avoir**.

*Suppression of PAS.*

The phrase, *I spoke to him six months ago*, would be rendered thus: *Je lui ai parlé il y a six mois*. And the phrase, *It is six months since I spoke to him*, would be rendered thus: *Il y a six mois que je NE lui ai parlé*

The meaning of, *It is six months since I spoke to him*, is evidently, *I have not spoken to him these six months*. When a negative turn can be given to the English sentence, the French use *ne*, but suppress *pas*.

Examine the following phrases:

*Negative turn.*

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. How long is it since you tasted coffee?           | You have not tasted coffee for how long a time?                                    |
| 2. It is three months since I tasted any.            | I have not tasted any these three months.  |
| 3. Since I wrote to him France has become an empire. | I have not written to him for some time, during which France has become an empire. |

Hence the French construction of the above phrases is:

1. *Combien y a-t-il que vous N'avez goûté de café?*
2. *Il y a trois mois que je N'en ai goûté.*
3. *Depuis que je NE lui ai écrit, la France est devenue empire.*

The above construction commonly takes place after *Depuis que* and *Y avoir*, followed by a definite period of time, and when the French verb is in the past tense. In the present, *pas* is used, as:

I have tasted no coffee these three months, or, *Il y a trois mois que je ne goûte pas de café.*

It is three months since I taste no coffee. Also, *Je n'ai pas goûté de café depuis trois mois*, or, *Je ne goûte pas de café depuis trois mois.*

Since I do not write to him France has become an empire. *Depuis que je ne lui écris pas, la France est devenue empire.*

**DISTANCE.**

*Il y a* is also used to mark distance, as:

It is one hundred and forty-four miles from New York to Albany, or, New York is one hundred and forty-four miles from Albany. *Il y a cent quarante-quatre milles de New York à Albany.*

*Combien.*

How far? is expressed by *combien de distance?* or simply *combien?*

Ex. How far is it from Paris to London? *Combien y a-t-il de Paris à Londres?*

We might also translate,

*Quelle distance y a-t-il de Paris à Londres?*

*Chez.* { To the house of. *De chez.* From the house of.  
          { At the house of.

From my house to their house.

*De chez moi chez eux.*

From thy house to his house.

*De chez toi chez lui.*

*Chez* meaning "To or at the house of," and requiring to be followed by the appropriate personal pronoun used after a preposition, as: Go home. *Allez chez vous.*

*Jusqu'où.*

How far? when its place can be supplied by, To what distance? is rendered by *jusqu'où*, which may be rendered literally, *to where?*

Q. How far did they go? *Jusqu'où sont-ils allés?*

A. They went as far as the barracks. *Ils sont allés jusqu'à la caserne.*

NEGATIVE AND INTERROGATIVE FORMS.

- |              |                          |                              |                             |                           |       |
|--------------|--------------------------|------------------------------|-----------------------------|---------------------------|-------|
| 1. Aff.      | <i>Il y a.</i>           | { There is, or<br>There are. | <i>Il y en a</i>            | { There is<br>There are } | some. |
| 2. Neg.      | <i>Il n' y a pas.</i>    | There is not.                | <i>Il n' y en a pas.</i>    | There is none.            |       |
| 3. Int.      | <i>y a -t-il?</i>        | Is there?                    | <i>y en a -t-il?</i>        | Is there any?             |       |
| 4. Int. neg. | <i>N' y a -t-il pas?</i> | Is there not?                | <i>N' y en a -t-il pas?</i> | Is there none?            |       |

APPLICATION.

PLACE—TIME.

QUESTION.

ANSWER.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. There is one franc in the drawer, is there not?        | There are two in the drawer and one in the purse.  |
| 2. How many francs are there in a dollar?                 | There are five francs and seven sous.  |
| 3. Was there not a three-dollar bill in your pocket-book? | There were no bills in my pocket-book; there were some in your brother's when I opened it an hour ago. |
| 4. How many centimes are there in one franc?              | There are one hundred centimes in one franc.   |

*Étudier sa leçon et la réciter à son maître.\**

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 5. Were there many ladies at the ball last Monday evening? | There were at least three hundred; there will be more next Tuesday. |
|--|---|

---

\* *To study one's lesson and recite it to one's master.* Phrases of this nature are now appended to each slip and copied on the black-board, for the purpose of exercising the pupil on the different tenses of verbs. If called upon to put this phrase through the *indicative present*, he recites as follows:

*J'étudie ma leçon et je la récite à mon maître.  
 Tu étudies ta leçon et tu la récites à ton maître.  
 Il étudie sa leçon et il la récite à son maître.  
 Elle étudie sa leçon et elle la récite à son maître.  
 On étudie sa leçon et on la récite à son maître.  
 Nous étudions notre leçon et nous la récitons à notre maître.  
 Vous étudiez votre leçon et vous la récitez à votre maître.  
 Ils étudient leur leçon et ils la récitent à leur maître.  
 Elles étudient leur leçon et elles la récitent à leur maître.*

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 6. Would there not have been more ladies at his concert, if he had given it on Monday instead of Tuesday? | There would have been a great many more; there would have been more than nine hundred.                 |
| 7. Is it true there has been a duel?  | There has been none this afternoon; there was one this morning; last week there were two on Wednesday. |

*Rencontrer un ami et lui souhaiter le bon jour.*

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 8. Did you go to the park last night?   | I did; there were handsome fire-works.   |
| 9. There is money in your pocket-book; why do you not buy the books you want?         | Although there is money in it, I do not dare to spend it. If there is any in yours, lend me some.                  |
| 10. Would there not be more discipline in the regiment if there were better officers? | Let there be better officers and there will be more discipline; there will be order and regularity in the service. |

*Etudier une science et l'approfondir.*

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 11. Will there be a good harvest this year?  | There will be a very abundant one.  |
| 12. Was there not a fire last night?         | There were two last night.  |
| 13. How many engines were there at the fire? | There were only five; there would have been more than twenty, if there had been more firemen in the city. |

*Aimer Dieu et le bénir.*

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 14. Is there any money in your pocket-book?      | There is none in my pocket-book; there are ten francs on the mantel-piece in my bed-room, and there is some change in my pantaloons-pocket; there may be some in my vest-pocket. |
| 15. Are there no newspapers in your coat-pocket? | There are none now, although there were some in it an hour ago.  |

*Emprunter un livre et le rendre.*

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 16. How long is it since you dined?  | It is hardly three hours since I dined.   |
| 17. Is it long since she breakfasted?                                      | It is a great while since she breakfasted, but we breakfasted a short time since. |
| 18. How long is it since your partner received this letter from my lawyer? | It is hardly a week since.  |
| 19. How long is it since they bought this music?                           | It is a great while since; it is more than eleven years since.                    |

*Descendre à la cave et y tirer du vin.*

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 20. How long had they had the vessel when it was seized? | They had had it hardly six months; we had had ours only a fortnight when it was seized. |
|--|---|



21. Is it long since he began studying French? It is not more than one year since. His brother speaks French, does he not?
22. Is it long since you were introduced to him? It is only a month since.

*Vider son verre, le remplir et en répandre le vin.*

23. Were you not here a moment ago? I have been here this half hour.
24. Were you not here a few hours ago? I was here half an hour ago; your servants have been here these two hours.
25. Were not those gentlemen in Russia six years ago? No, sir, they were in France six years ago, and they have been in the United States these five years.

*Recevoir des marchandises et les vendre.*

26. When were your sisters in England? They were there twelve years ago.
27. They were in Paris two years ago, were they not? No, they never went to Paris, although they were very desirous of going there two years ago.
28. At what o'clock did the pupils rise a month ago? They rose at half-past six a month ago, two months ago they rose at a quarter past five.

*Devoir de l'argent et ne pas payer.*

29. Would you not have received these goods six weeks ago, if there had been a steamboat on the river? I should have received mine less than a week ago, and your brother would have received his a fortnight ago.
30. Was not your uncle's physician here a few hours ago? He was here an hour and a half ago; he told me he had written to you a week ago.

*Aller à la ville ou y envoyer quelqu'un.*

31. How long have you been waiting for me? I have been waiting for you nearly two hours.
32. How long has your son been in Paris? He has been in Paris these two years.
33. How long has your son been here? These three years.
34. Where did he embark for this port? He embarked at Havre three weeks ago; as you see he has not been long on shore.
35. How long have you been walking? We have been walking these three hours.

*Cacheter une lettre et l'envoyer à la poste.*

36. That lad says he has been studying his lesson one hour; does he know it now? He says that although he has been studying it little more than an hour, he does not know more than half a page of it.

37. How long had the pupils been drawing when you came in? When I came in they had been drawing more than one hour and a half. Your brother had been drawing only half an hour.

*Se promener parce qu'on s'ennuie.*

- RX. 38. Have you been learning drawing long? It will be two months the day after to-morrow. My cousin had been learning two months when I began.
39. Had you not been studying more than two hours when I called you? We had been studying two hours and a quarter when you called us. You called us ten minutes ago, did you not?
40. Has your nephew been studying Spanish long? He has not; he has not been studying it more than three months and a half.

*Etudier une leçon et la répéter.*

41. How long had your brother been sleeping when his servant awakened him? When his servant awakened him he had been sleeping about an hour and a quarter; they went out together about fifteen minutes ago.
42. How long has your neighbor been dead? It was a month yesterday.
43. When the engines arrived, how long had the house been burning? When they arrived it had been burning more than three hours.
44. Would not your uncle have been married two years and a half if he had not broken his engagement? He would have been married four and a half, if he had not broken it.

*Commencer un devoir et ne pas l'achever.*

45. Have you been sick long? I have been sick ten days to-morrow.
46. You are always well here, are you not? I am very well in this climate; it is seven years since I was sick.
- X 47. How long is it since you dined with your friend in the country? It is four or five months since I dined with him. It is certainly five months since I saw him.
48. What has happened since you wrote to him? Since I wrote to him he has sold his farm to pay his creditors.

*Conjuguer un verbe et le corriger.*

49. How long is it since you received letters from Europe? I have not received any these six months; to tell the truth, it is very long since I wrote.
50. How long is it since the children tasted chocolate? It is a week since they tasted any.



61. Has it not rained continually since I saw you? It has rained almost every day since you saw me.
62. How long is it since she spoke to her lawyer? It is more than a fortnight since she spoke to him, and it is more than a month since he wrote to her.

*S'en aller à la campagne et s'y promener.*

63. Is it long since the corporals saw the colonel of the 4th regiment? They have not seen him for nearly a year, and it is more than six months since he wrote to them.
64. I am told you received a letter from your niece a week ago; what does she say about Paris? She writes that since she saw Paris, there have been astonishing changes in every part of the city.
65. What does your nephew say about Paris? He says that since he has seen Paris London appears very dull to him.

*S'abandonner à l'oisiveté, en subir la peine, et s'en repentir.*

66. Is it long since you ate meat? { It is several days since I ate meat.  
It is several days since I ate any.
67. How long is it since you ate any? { I have eaten no meat these three days.  
I have eaten none these three days.
68. You are better since you do not eat meat, are you not? I am not so well since I do not eat any.
69. For how long a time had you not tasted meat? I had not eaten meat for a week.
60. Why do you wish to go to town to-day rather than next week? Because it is very long since I went, and because I wish to see my aunt, whom I have not heard from these six weeks.

*Cueillir une rose et l'offrir à sa mère.*

DISTANCE.

71. How far is it from New York to Washington? It is more than two hundred miles.
62. Is it far from here to Berlin? It is: it is very far.
63. Is it far from there to Vienna? It is almost one hundred and fifty miles from there to Vienna.
64. Is it farther from Paris to Blois than from Orleans to Paris? It is farther from Orleans to Paris than from Paris to Blois.
- Perdre une place et en obtenir une autre.*
65. Is West Point far from New York? It is little less than sixty miles.
66. Can you tell me how far Providence is from Philadelphia? Some say it is 240 miles, it is, however, 250, if not farther.
67. What is the distance from Paris to London? From Paris to London it is nearly 200 miles.
68. How far is it from your house to mine? It is five miles from my house to yours.
69. Is it far from thy house to his? It is about a quarter of a mile.

70. It is not very far from his house to hers, is it? It is not farther from his to hers than from mine to yours.

*Aller à la campagne, s'y divertir et en revenir content.*

71. Do they say it is farther from London to Plymouth than from London to Liverpool? They say Plymouth is a long distance from London; nearly 300 miles; nevertheless it may be more.

72. Tell me how far it is from here to your uncle's. It may be nine miles and a half; it may be more, it may be less; I do not know exactly.

73. Can it be over nine miles? I thought it was not quite eight miles. It is over five miles to my house, and you know that my house is not half way.

*Faire une promesse et ne pas la tenir.*

## No. XIX.

### VERBS REFLECTED IN FRENCH AND NOT IN ENGLISH, AND USE OF THE PAST TENSE.

A great difficulty is created by the fact that many verbs are used in the reflected form in French, while the English verb does not admit of this form. A list of these verbs (149 in number) is given at p. 90 of Levizac's Grammar, but with the omission of the prepositions these verbs require, differing frequently from the preposition used in English. This deficiency is supplied by the instructor, and the list memorized.

For the practical application of these verbs, they have been combined with the Use of the Past Tense, another difficulty the learner has to encounter almost at the outset. The principles that are to govern the student in the somewhat perplexing use of the past tenses of the indicative, being explained and understood, the following set of exercises, it is deemed, will serve to ground him in their correct application in every instance.

### APPLICATION.

#### QUESTIONS.

#### ANSWERS.

- |                                   |                                  |                               |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| <i>S'abstenir de.</i>             | 1. During Napoleon's reign,      | They were not in the habit of |
| <i>Se fâcher</i> { <i>contre.</i> | were the marshals of the em-     | abstaining from levying       |
| { <i>avec.</i>                    | pire in the habit of abstain-    | very heavy ones. Napo-        |
|                                   | ing from levying contribu-       | leon was always offended      |
|                                   | tions in an enemy's country?     | with them when they did       |
|                                   |                                  | not.                          |
| <i>Se fâcher de.</i>              | 2. Did not your father get angry | He did, my mother got angry   |
|                                   | at that yesterday?               | at it also.                   |
| <i>Se brouiller.</i>              | 3. Did not the general get angry | He got angry with every-      |
|                                   | at you this morning?             | body; we fell out about an    |
|                                   |                                  | hour ago.                     |

<i>S'empresser de.</i>	4. Whenever he went out, were you not always eager to give him his cloak, gloves, and cane?	We were always eager to do so; he generally had his gloves in his pocket.
<i>Se hâter de.</i>	5. Last month those men hastened to pay their debts, did they not?	They did; they paid them as soon as the bank was open, on the thirtieth.
<i>Se déterminer à.</i>	6. I have been told they resolved to pay them this morning; were you not told the same thing?	I was told the same thing; to tell you the truth, I know they hastened to pay them all this morning.
<i>Se vanter.</i> <i>S'enrhumer.</i>	7. You always used to boast you would never catch cold in this climate; you caught cold this morning, however; how is that?	I caught cold this morning because I went out too early, with only a thin coat on.
<i>Se plaindre de.</i>	8. Why did you go out so early?	I went out early to complain of what my servant did last night.
<i>Se plaire à.</i>	9. When you were in Paris, did you not often go to the Tuileries?	We used to take great delight in going there.
<i>Se glisser.</i>	10. How did that child creep into this barrel?	I don't know how he crept into it, I did not see him get into it.
<i>Se méfier de.</i>	11. He says the sugar he lost consisted of twenty barrels; but, tell me, do you not mistrust what he says?	I did at first, I do not now.
<i>Se déterminer à.</i>	12. At what o'clock did you determine to set out?	I determined to set out about an hour and a half ago. How late is it now?
<i>S'évanouir.</i>	13. When she lived in that country, did she faint as often as she does in this?	She fainted regularly twice a day.
<i>S'endormir.</i>	14. You say that young man fell asleep after fainting; you also say he fainted to-day, do you not?	I say he fainted to-day, but I do not say he fell asleep immediately after fainting; he fell asleep an hour ago.
<i>S'enivrer.</i> <i>S'envoler.</i>	15. Did not your servant get intoxicated very often last winter?	He did, he used to get intoxicated every morning, and whenever he opened the cages to feed the birds, one or two generally flew away.

- S'emporter contre.* 16. Why did you fly in a passion with your sister when you got up this morning? I did not fly in a passion with my sister: I flew in a passion with my servant, who got intoxicated last night, and who was still so when I got up.
- Se lever.*
- Se coucher.* 17. At what time did you usually go to bed, when you were boarding in the country? In summer we went to bed at half-past eight; in winter we usually went to bed at ten; we never sat up very late.
- Se bonifier.* 18. That wine was very indifferent for two years; five years ago it grew suddenly much better. It is better than the wine you bought this year, is it not? The wine I bought this morning will improve with time; yours grew suddenly better, why should not mine?
- S'adoucir.* 19. When you came here ten years ago, were not the winters already growing milder? They were very severe when I came here: they have grown very mild within three or four years.
- S'enrichir.* 20. How did that merchant grow so rich this year? How many ships did he own last year? Really, I don't know. Last year his property consisted of two ships: he now has more than eighty.
- S'agenouiller.* 21. Whenever I knelt down you laughed at me; why did you do that? I could not help laughing, you looked so funny.
- Se moquer de.*
- S'empêcher de.* 22. When you saw William and James yesterday morning, why did you not make haste to speak to them? They were walking so fast that I could not overtake them.
- Se dépêcher de.*
- Se fondre.* 23. Formerly the snows on these mountains usually melted before the end of May; did they not? They usually melted about the beginning of June; now they do not melt before the beginning of August; last year they melted in the month of April.
- Se marier.* 24. Where did your father marry: here or in France? He married neither here nor in France; he married in England: he has been married fifteen years.
- S'apercevoir.* 25. He generally stopped reading whenever he perceived that I was listening to him, did he not? He not only stopped, but he persisted in not continuing: he was a queer fellow.
- S'obstiner à.*

<i>Se mutiner.</i>	26. Did not the crew of that vessel mutiny six months ago?	Somebody told me they did. I have been told they mutinied again to-day.
<i>Se lever.</i>	27. At what time did you commonly rise when you were in France?	We commonly rose at seven, we breakfasted at nine, we dined at five, and at seven, after a walk, we went to the theatre.
<i>Se rappeler de.</i>	28. When you saw your brother-in-law this morning, did you remember to tell him what I told you last night?	I saw him, but I did not recollect what you told me. What did you tell me? Tell me again.
<i>S'asseoir.</i> <i>Se sauver.</i> <i>S'esquiver.</i>	29. Just as you were sitting down, two or three men looked in at the door and then ran away; you did not see them, did you?	Yes, I did; one was small, the other was tall; both had red flannel shirts on. I ran to the door immediately and saw them steal away down a blind alley.
<i>S'abonner à.</i>	30. When you lived in Paris, were you not in the habit of subscribing to every paper that was published, good, bad, or indifferent?	Not at all; I only subscribed to those that upheld the government.
<i>S'abonner à.</i>	31. What paper did you subscribe to last summer?	I did not subscribe to any paper: whenever I wanted to read the papers, I borrowed them from my friends.
<i>Se promener en bateau.</i> <i>Se promener à cheval.</i> <i>Se promener en voiture.</i> <i>Se promener en traîneau.</i>	32. How did you spend your time when you were in St. Petersburg?	In summer we generally took a sail in the morning, at two o'clock we rode on horseback or in a carriage; in winter we rode out in a two-horse sleigh.
<i>Se réfugier auprès de.</i> <i>Se retirer de.</i>	33. Were you not absent when those patriots took refuge with us?	I was; I had withdrawn from business: I was living in the country.



**Difference between French and English Prepositions.**

There being perhaps nothing in the study of the French language more embarrassing for the learner than the correct use of prepositions, when connecting verbs with an object or with other verbs, for the purposes of instruction and accurate application, we have broken the subject into the following heads, viz. :

1. Verbs and Adjectives requiring before the object a preposition different from the preposition which generally corresponds with it in English.
2. Verbs requiring a preposition after them in English and none in French.
3. Verbs requiring no preposition in English and requiring one in French.
4. Verbs and adjectives requiring *de* before the Infinitive which follows them.
5. Verbs and adjectives requiring *à* before the Infinitive which follows them.
6. Verbs requiring no preposition before the Infinitive which follows them.

The learner being made to memorize and apply successively the lists comprising the above nomenclature, he will naturally acquire facility in the use of French prepositions, and, what is very important, he will be enabled to render them understandingly when occurring in any French text.

**NO. 1.—LIST OF VERBS AND ADJECTIVES REQUIRING BEFORE THE OBJECT A PREPOSITION DIFFERENT FROM THE PREPOSITION CORRESPONDING WITH IT IN ENGLISH.**

To agree about.	<i>Convenir de.</i>	To be sufficient for.	<i>Suffire à.</i>
To carry about.	<i>Porter sur.</i>	To thank for.	<i>Remercier de.</i>
To discourse about.	<i>Discourir de.</i>	To borrow from.	<i>Emprunter à.</i>
To inquire about.	<i>S'informer de.</i>	To conceal from.	<i>Cacher à.</i>
To thirst after.	<i>Etre alléré de.</i>	To escape	<i>S'échapper de.</i>
To blush at, with.	<i>Rougir de.</i>	(from a place).	
To grieve at.	<i>S'affliger de.</i>	To escape—	<i>échapper à.</i>
To laugh at.	<i>Rire de.</i>	from the memory.	
To laugh at.	<i>Se moquer de.</i>	(words fr. a person),	
To rejoice at.	<i>Se réjouir de.</i>	(to happen to say),	<i>échapper à une per-</i>
To smile on, upon.	<i>Sourire à.</i>		<i>sonne de dire une chose.</i>
To smile with.	<i>Sourire de.</i>	To hear a person say.	<i>Oùir dire à.</i>
To gain by.	<i>Gagner à.</i>	To take from a person.	<i>ôter à.</i>
To get by.	<i>Gagner à.</i>	To take off is <i>ôter</i> and <i>ôter de</i> ; also	
To profit by.	<i>Profiter de.</i>	<i>de dessus.</i>	
To answer for.	<i>Répondre de.</i>	To take away from.	<i>Prendre à.</i>
To blame for.	<i>Blâmer de.</i>	To acquiesce in.	<i>Acquiescer à.</i>
To bless for.	<i>Bénir de.</i>	To be interested in.	<i>S'intéresser à.</i>
To care for.	<i>Se soucier de.</i>	To delight in.	<i>Se plaire à.</i>
To chastise for.	<i>Châtier de.</i>	To glory in.	<i>Se glorifier de.</i>
To console for.	<i>Consoler de.</i>	To pride in.	<i>S'enorgueillir de.</i>
To design for.	<i>Destiner à.</i>	To ask of.	<i>Demander à.</i>
To grieve for.	<i>S'affliger de.</i>	To think of	<i>Penser à.</i>
To pity for.	<i>Plaindre de.</i>	(memory).	
To praise for.	<i>Louer de.</i>	To think of	<i>Penser de.</i>
To provide for.	<i>Pourvoir à.</i>	(opinion).	
To punish for.	<i>Punir de.</i>	To take pity on.	<i>Avoir pitié de.</i>



To play on.	<i>Jouer de.</i>	To die with.	<i>Mourir de.</i>
To triumph over.	<i>Triompher de.</i>	To do with.	<i>Faire de.</i>
To pretend to.	<i>Se piquer de.</i>	To embellish with.	<i>Embellir de.</i>
To agree upon.	<i>Convenir de.</i>	To endure with.	<i>Douler de.</i>
To call upon.	<i>Passer chez.</i>	To inflame with.	<i>Enflammer de.</i>
To congratulate upon.	<i>Féliciter de.</i>	To feed with.	<i>Nourrir de.</i>
To depend upon.	<i>Dépendre de.</i>	To fill with.	<i>Remplir de.</i>
To feed upon.	<i>Se nourrir de.</i>	To glut with.	<i>Assouvir de.</i>
To overawe.	} <i>En imposer à.</i>	To load with.	<i>Charger de.</i>
To impose upon.		To meddle with.	<i>Se mêler de.</i>
To live upon.	<i>Vivre de.</i>	To overwhelm with.	<i>Accabler de.</i>
To prevail upon.	<i>Persuader à une p. de.</i>	To part with.	} <i>Se défaire de.</i>
To seize upon.	} <i>Se saisir de.</i> <i>S'emparer de.</i>	To get rid of.	
To smile upon.		To perish with.	<i>Périr de.</i>
To take upon one's self.	<i>Sourire à une p. de.</i>	To prevail upon	<i>Persuader à une p.</i>
To abound with.	<i>Abonder en.</i>	a person to do, &c.	<i>de faire, &amp;c.</i>
To adorn with.	<i>Orner de.</i>	To be persuaded of,	} <i>Etre persuadé de.</i>
To amuse with.	<i>Amuser de.</i>	&c.	
To arm one's self with.	<i>S'armer de.</i>	To provide, furnish	} <i>Fournir de.</i>
To bathe with.	<i>Baigner de.</i>	with.	
To charge with.	<i>Accuser de.</i>	To refresh with.	<i>Se rafraîchir de.</i>
To compare with.	<i>Comparer à.</i>	To set with.	<i>Garnir de.</i>
To comply with.	} <i>Condescendre à.</i> <i>Consentir à.</i>	To sport with.	<i>Se jouer de.</i>
To cover with.		To store with.	<i>Munir de.</i>
To cover one's self	} <i>Couvrir de.</i> <i>Se couvrir de.</i>	To swarm with.	<i>Fourmiller de.</i>
with.		To tax with.	<i>Tancer de.</i>
To dispense with.	} <i>Dispenser de.</i> <i>Se dispenser de.</i>	To threaten with.	<i>Menacer de.</i>
		To tire with.	<i>Ennuyer de.</i>
		To do without.	<i>Se passer de.</i>

ADJECTIVES AND PAST PARTICIPLES USED AS ADJECTIVES.

Concerned about.	} <i>Inquiet de.</i>	To be angry with	} <i>Etre fâché contre</i>
Uneasy about.		a person.	
Easy about.	<i>Tranquille sur.</i>	To be animated with.	<i>Etre animé de.</i>
Angry,	} at a per-	To be armed with.	<i>Etre armé de.</i>
offended,		To be charmed with.	<i>Etre charmé de.</i>
vexed,	son.	To be contented with.	<i>Etre content de.</i>
Angry,	} at a thing	To be delighted with.	<i>Etre charmé de.</i>
offended,		To be disgusted with.	<i>Etre dégoûté de.</i>
vexed,		To be displeased	} <i>Etre mécontent de.</i>
To be astonished at.	<i>Etre étonné de.</i>	with.	
To be exasperated at.	<i>Etre outré de.</i>	To be in love with.	<i>Etre amoureux de.</i>
To be scandalized at.	<i>Etre scandalisé de.</i>	To be moved with.	<i>Etre touché de.</i>
	( <i>Se scandaliser de.</i> )	To be overjoyed with.	<i>Etre ravi de.</i>
To be surprised at.	<i>Etre surpris de.</i>	To be pleased with.	<i>Etre content de.</i>
To be followed by.	<i>Etre suivi de.</i>	To be provided with.	<i>Etre pourvu de.</i>
To be preceded by.	<i>Etre précédé de.</i>	To be puffed up with	} <i>Etre bouffi de.</i> <i>Etre enflé de.</i>
To be fit for.	<i>Etre propre à.</i>	To be satiated with.	
To be good for.	<i>Etre bon à.</i>	To be satisfied with.	<i>Etre satisfait de.</i>
To be obliged for.	<i>Etre obligé à une p. de.</i>		

To be sorry for.	<i>Etre fâché de.</i>	To be struck with.	<i>Etre frappé de.</i>
To be dexterous in.	<i>Etre adroit à.</i>	To be surrounded with.	<i>Etre entouré de.</i>
To be easily affected by.	<i>Etre sensible à.</i>	To be taken up with.	<i>Etre occupé de.</i>
To be acquainted with.	<i>Etre connu de.</i>	To be tormented with.	<i>Etre tourmenté de.</i>
To be known by.		To be transported with.	<i>Etre transporté de.</i>

## APPLICATION.

## LIST No. 1.—DIFFERENCE BETWEEN FRENCH AND ENGLISH PREPOSITIONS.

	QUESTIONS.	ANSWERS.
To agree about.	1. You had already agreed about that when we met you, had you not?	We had not; we could not.
To carry about.	2. Do you always carry so much money about you?	I sometimes carry a great deal more about me.
To discourse about.	3. What affairs will the senators discourse about?	They will discourse about what they were discoursing yesterday.
To inquire about.	4. Do you not intend to inquire about your friend's health?	I have already inquired about it; he is better.
To talk about.	5. Gentlemen, please to tell me what you are talking about.	We are talking about an affair which greatly concerns you.
To inquire after.	6. When you write, do you intend inquiring after the captain?	As he never inquires after me, I do not intend to inquire after him.
To thirst after.	7. Did not that tyrant thirst after the blood of his subjects?	He did: it is said he died tormented with remorse.
To blush with.	8. If he had done that, would he not have blushed with shame?	He would, and all his friends would have grieved at it.
To grieve at.	9. Although you grieve at that, nobody seems to pity you.	Nobody pities me because I am not acquainted here.
To laugh at.	10. What were you all laughing at?	We were laughing at what you said this morning.
To laugh at. To quiz. To make fun of. To make game of.	11. Do not make fun of others, and nobody will make fun of you.	I have been here these six months, and I have never made fun of anybody, although everybody makes fun of me.
To rejoice at. To smile upon. To smile with. To gain by. To get by.	12. Did not the orator smile upon the assembly when he perceived the members rejoicing at the success of his speech?	He did; his enemies were smiling also, but they were smiling with contempt.
To profit by.	13. What do you expect to gain	I do not expect to gain any

To answer for.	by blaming so frequently	thing by it; I know they
To blame for.	your workmen for speaking	do not care for what I say;
To bless for.	to their neighbors?	they do not wish to profit by my advice.
To care for.	14. You cannot answer for their	I cannot, nobody can; they.
To chastise for.	conduct then; or rather you	will be chastised for their
To console for.	do not care to answer for it.	malice.
To design for.	15. What is that lady grieving	She is grieving for the loss
To grieve for.	for?	of the bells that were de- signed for her church.
To pity for.	16. Is not the congregation	It is very generally; it is
	pitied for the loss?	thought however that the loss will soon be provided for.
To praise for.	17. Do you not think it is wrong	Instead of praising them for
To provide for.	to praise those men for their	it, they should be punished
To punish for.	temerity?	for it.
To be sufficient for.	18. Is not that sum sufficient for	It is not; nevertheless, I
To thank for.	you?	thank you for it. If you
To borrow from.	19. You need not borrow any	cannot lend me a little more
	from them, my intention is	money, I shall have to bor- row some from my friends.
	to provide for all your wants;	
	I will send you some money	
	by to-morrow's mail.	
To conceal from.	20. Why do you conceal the	I do not, and I assure you
	truth from your friends?	that I never have.
To escape	21. Is it long since the convict	He escaped from prison
(from a place),	escaped from prison?	more than a week ago.
(the memory or	22. Do you understand the true	I do not; the true sense has
observation).	sense of that passage?	escaped all the translators.
To hear a person	23. Did you not hear my father	I heard him say so this after-
say.	say that he had paid the sum?	noon.
To take from.	24. Why does that child cry; is	He had been playing for
	any one taking away his	about an hour when his
	playthings?	brother came in and took them away from him.
To take off.	25. Why do you not take the	I do not wish to take it off
	water off the fire?	until it boils.
To take away from.	26. Has their passport been	It has; it will be returned
	taken from them?	to-morrow.
To comply with.	27. Will you not comply with	I cannot.
To acquiesce in.	his request?	
To be interested in.	28. Are you not interested in	I am not.
	his welfare?	
To delight in.	29. Do you delight in garden-	I do sometimes.
	ing?	

To glory in.	30. He glories in his riches, does he not?	He does.
To pride one's self upon.	31. They pride themselves upon their birth, do they not?	They do not.
To ask money of a person.	32. He says you are always asking him for money; is that so?	That is not so; I have never asked him for a cent.
To ask for.		
To think of (memory).	33. Have you thought of sending your cousin the money he asked for this morning? I am almost sure you have not.	I thought of it once or twice; is there still time to send it? I am sorry for having forgotten it.
To think of (opinion).	34. What do you think of this pack of quills?	I think it is strange it should be in my desk.
To have pity on.	35. How long is it since food was distributed to the poor?	It is very long since; nobody takes pity on them.
To take pity on.		
To play upon.	36. What instruments do your nieces play?	The eldest plays the piano; the youngest the guitar.
To triumph over	37. I have been told that James pretends to generosity, and that he has been often heard to say that if he ever triumphed over his enemies, he would pardon them.	I never heard it said that he pretended to generosity. I do not think he will ever pardon them, whether he triumph over them or not.
To pretend to.		
To agree upon.		
To call upon.	38. You intend to call on Mrs. Blanchard earlier than ten o'clock, do you not?	I intend to call upon her before half-past nine to congratulate her on her daughter's marriage.
To congratulate upon.		
To depend upon.	39. Upon whom does that young clerk depend?	He has no salary as yet; he depends on his old mother.
To feed upon.	40. What do those animals feed upon?	They feed upon what they find.
To live upon.		
To impose upon.	41. Did not that orator overawe the assembly by his manly eloquence?	He did; after his speech the vote was unanimous.
To overawe.		
To prevail upon.	42. What did you mention in your note to the police officer?	I mentioned the necessity of prevailing upon his comrades to seize upon the suspected person where'er they should meet him.
To seize upon.		
To smile upon.		
To take upon one's self.	43. Do you take upon yourself to prove the guns?	I do not; Lieutenant Junot will.
To abound with.	44. France abounds with fruit, does it not?	It abounds with grapes: much wine is made in France.

To adorn with.	45. Do you not intend to adorn your room with pictures?	I do; you do also, do you not?
To amuse with.	46. He charges you with amusing him with promises; is that so?	It is not so; we do not speak
To arm one's self with.	47. Have you armed the sailors with pistols?	We have not. We have only pikes.
To arm with.		
To bathe with.	48. Was not that woman weeping bitterly over her child?	She was: we could not console her.
To charge with.	49. Do you compare this cloth with that?	We compare the blue with the green.
To compare with.		
To comply with.	50. You should not comply with all his caprices; why do you?	We do not always.
To cover with.	51. You are covered with dust; brush your clothes.	Hand me the brush if you are not using it.
To cover one's self with.		
To die with.	52. Would not the troops have died with cold if they had remained long in those regions?	They would; many had already died of the scurvy.
To die of.		
To dispense with.	53. Be so kind as to dispense with my doing that.	I cannot: you ought to have done that an hour ago.
To do with.	54. What are they going to do with that man?	I suppose he will be condemned to hard labor.
To embellish with.	55. Why do you not embellish your garden with finer flowers?	I can only get common ones
To endow with.	56. Why do you act thus? you do not seem to be endowed with common sense.	Were I to act otherwise, everybody would be inflamed with anger.
To inflame with.		
To feed on.	57. How long is it since you used to feed your dogs on meat?	I fed them on meat all last year; I now feed them on bread, and milk and water.
To fill with.	58. What have you filled your glass with?	I have just filled it with beer.
To glut with.	59. Were you not reading the life of Caligula this morning?	I was: he was a monster glutted with carnage.
To meddle with.	60. When you say that the troops returned loaded with booty, you do not tell the truth; you had better meddle with your own affairs.	Everybody says they did, and everybody is overwhelmed with shame on account of their abominable conduct.
To overwhelm with.		
To part with.	61. How long is it since you got rid of your gray mare?	I got rid of her two or three months ago; when did you get rid of yours?
To get rid of.		



To perish with.	62. That man's conduct is very bad, is it not?	It is; he will perish in want.
To prevail upon (a person to do, &c.)	63. Could you not prevail upon your friends to accompany you to the Consul's office?	They all say they will not.
To provide with.	64. Was not the regiment furnished with provisions?	The whole army was furnished with provisions for a six months' campaign.
To refresh with.	65. What did you take at the hotel?	We refreshed ourselves with a glass of wine and water.
To set with.	66. Was not your miniature set with rich diamonds?	It was set with diamonds of the finest water.
To sport with.	67. Those men are sporting with your credulity; you should avoid them.	I know they are: let them sport with it: I shall have my turn.
To store with.	68. How long had the fortress been stored with provisions when the major took command of it?	It had only been stored three weeks when he arrived.
To swarm with.	69. Do not the roads swarm with robbers?	They do: it is impossible to travel without an escort.
To tax with.	70. With what are the officers taxed?	They are taxed with sedition.
To threaten with.	71. What is the matter with you? how pale you look!	We have just been stopped on the road by thieves, who threatened us with death.
To tire with.	72. If you can do without your black velvet vest this evening, will you lend it me if I should want it?	I am afraid I shall not be able to do without it. It is long since I lent you a vest, however.
To do without.		
Concerned about.	73. His mother is very uneasy about his health, is she not?	She is, although the physician is not at all uneasy about it.
Uneasy about.		
Greedy after.	74. Have not Jews the reputation of being very greedy after riches?	They have: they are generally very greedy after them.
Angry	75. You are not angry with me for having had that alder cut down, are you?	I am not; it was just one ell in circumference, was it not?
Offended		
Vexed		
Angry	76. What are you vexed at?	I am vexed at your tormenting that poor little cabin-boy.
Offended		
Vexed		



To be astonished at.	77. You are astonished to see moss here, are you not?	I am not, I knew we should find some here: gather some to pack up the crockery.
To be exasperated at.	78. Is she not exasperated at his refusal?	She is scandalized at it.
To be scandalized at.		
To be surprised at.	79. Those ladies say they are surprised at his kindness towards you.	Why should they be so: have I not always behaved well towards him?
To be preceded by.	80. Was not the supper preceded by a ball?	It was preceded by a ball and followed by a concert.
To be followed by.		
To be fit for.	81. What is that marble fit for?	It is fit for making statues.
To be good for.	82. The musician you were speaking to is a trumpeter; is he not? What was he saying about his instrument?	He was telling me that his trumpet was good for nothing.
To be obliged for.	83. You ought to be obliged to him for his letter; you do not appear to be so, however, how is that?	He has delayed too long writing to me; I am sorry for his long forgetfulness.
To be sorry for.		
To be dexterous in.	84. Your brother is still very dexterous in pistol-shooting, is he not?	He is not as dexterous in it as formerly, and I am sorry for it.
To be sorry for.		
To be easily affected by.	85. Why are you so easily affected by cold?	I was born in a warm climate.
To be acquainted with.	86. What is celebrity?	The advantage of being known by those whom you do not know.
To be known by.		
To be angry with.	87. Is she angry with him still?	She is no longer angry with him, she is angry with you now.
To be animated with.	88. You were at the meeting last night; were not the General's partisans animated with great zeal?	They were; it is said they came armed with sabres and pistols.
To be armed with.		
To be charmed with.	89. Every body is charmed with that young lady's manners; why are you not also?	I have seen her but once, and it is some time ago.
To be contented with.	90. What is the matter with you; are you not contented with your office?	I am delighted with it; I am as much delighted with my new one as I was disgusted with my former one.
To be delighted with.		
To be disgusted with.		
To be displeased with.	91. If you are displeased with your workmen, why do you not discharge them?	I discharged ten a week ago.

To be in love with.	92. Your friend is in love with my cousin, is he not?	He is not, he has only known her one week.
To be pleased with.	93. You are pleased with the letter you have just received, are you not, sister?	Yes, brother; I am delighted with it.
To be overjoyed, delighted with.		
To be provided with.	94. Here is a letter from your nephew; he says he has lost the clothes you had provided him with.	Well, now really, that is too much; write to him immediately, and tell him that I cannot provide him with any more.
To be puffed up with.		
To be satiated with.	95. Do historians praise that prince?	They do not; they unite in saying that, surrounded by flatterers, satiated with pleasures, and weary of every thing, he will always be regarded as the weakest of princes.
To be satisfied with.		
To be struck with.	96. What does the book-keeper say?	He says he has just looked over the documents, and that the tenor of the principal act strikes him with astonishment.
To be surrounded with, by.		
To be taken up with.	97. What do you think of the new clerk?	I am not satisfied with him; he is too much taken up with his own person.
To be tormented with, by.		
To be transported with.		

LIST NO. 2.—VERBS REQUIRING A PREPOSITION AFTER THEM IN ENGLISH AND NOT IN FRENCH.

		DIRECT OBJECTS IN FRENCH.	
		<i>une chose.</i>	<i>une personne.</i>
<i>Regarder.</i>	To look at.	a thing.	a person.
<i>Demander.</i>	To ask for.	a thing.	a person.
<i>Acheter.</i>	To buy for.	one dollar.	
<i>Aller chercher.</i>	To go for.	a thing.	a person.
<i>Chercher.</i>	To look for.	a thing.	a person.
<i>Vendre.</i>	To sell for.	one cent.	
<i>Attendre.</i>	To wait for.	a thing.	a person.
<i>Souhaiter.</i>	To wish for.	a thing.	
<i>Daigner</i>	To please to.	do a thing.	
<i>Admettre.</i>	To admit of.	{ a thing, proofs, &c.	
<i>Approuver.</i>	To approve of.	a thing.	
<i>Prier (de bef v.).</i>	To beg of.		a person.
<i>Ignorer.</i>	To be ignorant of.	a thing.	

		DIRECT OBJECTS IN FRENCH.	
		<i>une chose.</i>	<i>une personne.</i>
<i>Tyranniser.</i>	To tyrannize over.		a person.
<i>Ecouter.</i>	To listen to	a sound.	a person.
<i>Regarder.</i>	To look upon.	a thing.	a person.
<i>Engager.</i>	} <i>de bef. v.</i>	To prevail upon.	a person.
<i>Engager.</i>		To prevail with.	a person.
<i>Résoudre.</i>	To resolve upon.	a thing.	
<i>Endurer.</i>	To bear with.	a thing.	
<i>Rencontrer.</i>	To meet with.		a person.
<i>Souffrir.</i>	To put up with.	a thing.	
<i>Attendre.</i>	To stay for.		a person.

APPLICATION.

- X
- To look at. 1. There is a poor man asking for you; he says he wants you to buy his partridges and quails for three shillings a pair; please to come down and look at them. I bought some a little while ago for two and sixpence a pair; however, listen to what he has to say, while I look for my pocket-book; I may have to go up-stairs for it.
- To ask for.
- To buy for.
- To go for.
- To look for.
- To sell for.
- R
- You need not go up-stairs, it is down-stairs.
- To stay for. 2. I do not approve of your waiting for your brother so long every day; why do you wait for him more than half an hour? I am obliged to stay for him, because his master will admit of no excuse, and will not let him out before twelve o'clock, and sometimes not before half-past.
- To wait for.
- To wish for.
- To accept of.
- To admit of.
- To approve of.
- To beg of.
- To be ignorant of.
- To tyrannize over.
- To listen to.
- To look upon.
- To prevail upon. 3. Listen to me: Mr. Lenoir is entirely ignorant of what people say about him: I know he looks upon you as a friend, therefore call upon him and let him know all about it. I will, and I will endeavor to prevail upon him to alter his conduct. I am told his wife is the cause of every thing: she tyrannizes over him.
- To prevail with. 4. Has your partner resolved upon any thing? If he has not, prevail with him to come and see me. I have something to say he will approve of. I will endeavor to prevail upon him to call upon you; meanwhile his creditors tyrannize over him: he is obliged to bear with their importunities and put up with their impertinence.
- To resolve upon.
- To bear with.
- To meet with.
- To put up with.

## LIST NO. 3.—VERBS HAVING NO PREPOSITION IN ENGLISH AND REQUIRING ONE IN FRENCH.

To abuse.	<i>Abuser de</i>
To perceive.	<i>S'apercevoir de.</i>
To want.	<i>Avoir besoin de.</i>
To pity.	<i>Avoir pitié de.</i>
To change.	<i>Changer de.</i>
To mistrust.	<i>Se défier de.</i>
To resign.	<i>Se démettre de.</i>
To disown.	<i>Disconvenir de.</i>
To doubt.	<i>Douter de.</i>
Not to mind.	<i>Ne pas s'embarrasser de.</i>
To lament.	<i>Gémir de.</i>
To inherit.	<i>Hériter de.</i>
To enjoy.	<i>Jouir de.</i>
To want. }	<i>Manquer de</i>
To lack. }	
To slander.	<i>Médire de.</i>
To mistrust.	<i>Se méfier de.</i>
To mistake.	<i>Se méprendre de.</i>
To mock.	<i>Se moquer de.</i>
To spare. }	<i>Se passer de.</i>
To do without. }	
To use.	<i>Se servir de.</i>
To remember.	<i>Se souvenir de.</i>
To use.	<i>User de. (User de violence envers une personne.)</i>
To revenge. }	<i>Se venger de.</i>
To avenge. }	
To attempt life, &c.	<i>Attenter à.</i>
To bid.	<i>Commander à. (Commander à une personne de faire une chose.)</i>
To compassionate.	<i>Compâtrir à.</i>
To suit. }	<i>Convenir à.</i>
To become. }	
To suit. }	<i>Seoir à.</i>
To become. }	
To forbid.	<i>Défendre à. (Défendre à une personne de faire une chose.)</i>
To displease.	<i>Déplaire à.</i>
To disobey.	<i>Désobéir à.</i>
To trust.	<i>Se fier à.</i>
To break one's word.	<i>Manquer à (sa parole)</i>
To concern.	<i>Importeur à. (Importer à une personne de faire une chose.)</i>
To injure.	<i>Nuire à.</i>
To obey.	<i>Obéir à.</i>

To obviate. }	
To prevent. }	<i>Obvier à.</i>
To oppose.	<i>S'opposer à.</i>
To order.	<i>Ordonner à. Ordonner à une personne de faire une chose.</i>
To forgive.	<i>Pardonner à.</i>
To permit.	<i>Permettre à. Permettre à une personne de faire une chose.</i>
To persuade.	<i>Persuader à. Persuader à une personne de faire une chose.</i>
To please.	<i>Plaire à.</i>
To mind.	<i>Prendre garde à.</i>
To promise.	<i>Promettre à. Promettre à une personne de faire une chose.</i>
To renounce.	<i>Renoncer à.</i>
To answer.	<i>Répondre à.</i>
To resist.	<i>Résister à.</i>
To resemble.	<i>Ressembler à.</i>
To supply.	<i>Subvenir à.</i>
To succeed.	<i>Succéder à.</i>
To outlive.	<i>Survivre à.</i>
To touch.	<i>Toucher à.</i>

APPLICATION.

LIST NO. 3.—DIFFERENCE BETWEEN FRENCH AND ENGLISH PREPOSITIONS.

QUESTIONS.

ANSWERS.

To abuse.	1. I do not wish to abuse your	You perceive no change in
To perceive.	patience, but I must repeat	me; I do not mistrust you;
To want.	to you that I have given up	I will lend you some, but
To pity.	my place and that I want my	why did you give up your
To change.	money; if you have not	place?
To mistrust.	changed your mind I hope	
To resign.	you will lend me a little.	
To give up.		
To disown.	2. The person you speak of dis-	You are right, it is all one
To doubt.	owns having doubted your	to me; I do not mind what
To mind.	word, but as he does not en-	he thinks of me; I never
To lament.	joy a good reputation, I pre-	think of the fellow: why
To inherit.	sume it is all one to you whe-	does he think of me?
To want.	ther he disowns having	
To lack.	doubted it or not.	
To slander.	3. How can your brother suc-	He cannot; but now I think
To mistrust.	ceed? he mistrusts every-	of it, he uses my name very
To mistake.	body, and slanders his em-	often. Tell him not to use
To mock.	ployers; I do not understand	it any more. Remember
To ridicule.	his conduct; can he do with-	this.
To spare.	out their assistance?	
To do without.		
To use.		
To remember.		



To use.	4. You say that that man has attempted your younger brother's life, and that you will revenge the outrage; but is revenge a noble passion?	I know it is not, but can I allow him to use violence toward so dear a relative with impunity?
To revenge.		
To attempt.		
To bid.		
To order.		
To compassionate.		
To suit.		
To become.		
To forbid.	5. What did you forbid those boys to tell their master?	I forbid them to tell their master that his sons had disobeyed him.
To displease.		
To disobey.		
To trust.	6. They will injure him if they continue to behave thus, will they not?	They have already injured him a great deal; they displease everybody; nobody trusts them.
To break.		
To concern.		
To injure.		
To obey.	7. Must not the soldiers obey the order, whether it please or displease them?	They must; and there is no way of opposing it; persuade them to obey it; tell them that if they do they will be pardoned many old offences.
To prevent.		
To oppose.		
To order.		
To pardon.		
To permit.		
To persuade.		
To resemble.	8. Answer my question; did you not promise your father to give up gaming, and did you not also promise him to return home during the present month?	I promised him to renounce gaming, but I did not promise him to return in the course of this month; I can resist the temptation, and do not wish to return home; I have answered your question; have you any other to ask me?
To please.		
To mind.		
To promise.		
To give up.		
To answer.		
To resist.		
To resemble.	9. Who is to succeed the present Queen of England?	The Prince of Wales is to succeed her.
To supply.		
To succeed.		
To outlive.	10. Does the physician say he will outlive his brothers?	He says he may.
To touch.	11. I have just regulated my watch, why did you touch it?	I did not touch the hands; I merely took it up to take the chain off.

LIST NO. 4.—VERBS AND ADJECTIVES REQUIRING *de* BEFORE THE INFINITIVE.

<i>S'abstenir de.</i>	To abstain from.
<i>Accuser de.</i>	To accuse of.
<i>Achever de.</i>	To finish, present participle; as, I finish writing, <i>Je finis d'écrire.</i>
<i>Affecter de.</i>	To affect to, or pr. p.
<i>Appréhender de.</i>	To fear to, or pr. p.
<i>S'attendre à.</i>	To expect to.



<i>Avertir de.</i>	To warn to.
<i>S'aviser de.</i>	To take it into one's head. To bethink one's self.
<i>Blâmer de.</i>	To blame for.
<i>Cesser de.</i>	To cease, pr. p.
<i>Charger de.</i>	To charge with.
<i>Commander de.</i>	To command to ( <i>commander à une personne de faire une ch.</i> )
<i>Commencer de or à.</i>	To begin to.
<i>Conjurer de.</i>	To entreat to.
<i>Conseiller de.</i>	To advise to.
<i>Consoler de.</i>	To console for.
<i>Continuer de or à.</i>	To continue to, or pr. p.
<i>Convaincre de.</i>	To convince of.
<i>Convenir de.</i>	To agree about.
<i>Craindre de.</i>	To fear, p. p.
<i>Décourager de.</i>	To discourage from
<i>Défendre de.</i>	To forbid to, or pr. p. ( <i>à une pers. de faire une ch.</i> )
<i>Se dépêcher de.</i>	To make haste to.
<i>Désespérer de.</i>	To despair, pr. p.
<i>Désirer de.</i>	To desire to.
<i>Déterminer de.</i>	To determine to. <i>Se déterminer requires à.</i>
<i>Détourner de.</i>	To divert from.
<i>Différer de.</i>	To delay, pr. p.
<i>Dire de.</i>	To tell to. ( <i>à une pers. de faire une ch.</i> )
<i>Disconvenir de.</i>	To disown, pr. p.
<i>Dispenser de.</i>	To dispense with
<i>Dissuader de.</i>	To dissuade from, and pr. p.
<i>Ecrire de.</i>	To write to.
<i>S'efforcer de.</i>	To endeavor to.
<i>Enjoindre de.</i>	To enjoin to.
<i>Empêcher de.</i>	To prevent from.
<i>S'empresser de or à.</i>	To hasten to. To be eager to.
<i>Entreprendre de.</i>	To undertake to.
<i>Essayer de.</i>	To try to.
<i>Eviter de.</i>	To avoid, pr. p.
<i>Excuser de.</i>	To excuse from.
<i>Exempter de.</i>	To exempt from.
<i>Feindre de.</i>	To feign to, or pr. p.
<i>Finir de.</i>	To finish, pr. p.
<i>Se flatter de.</i>	To flatter one's self.
<i>Se garder de.</i>	To beware, pr. p. To take care not to. To refrain from.
<i>Gronder de.</i>	To scold for.
<i>Se hâter de.</i>	To hasten to.
<i>Inspirer de.</i>	To inspire with, to.
<i>Juger (à propos de).</i>	To think proper to.

<i>Mander de.</i>	To send word to.
<i>Manquer de.</i>	To fail to, or pr. p. To omit.
<i>Menacer de.</i>	To threaten to.
<i>Mériter de.</i>	To deserve to.
<i>Négliger de.</i>	To neglect, pr. p.
<i>Offrir de.</i>	To offer to.
<i>Omettre de.</i>	To omit, pr. p.
<i>Ordonner de.</i>	To order to. ( <i>à une pers. de faire une ch.</i> )
<i>Oublier de.</i>	To forget to.
<i>Pardonner de.</i>	To forgive for, and pr. p. ( <i>à une pers. de, &amp;c.</i> )
<i>Persuader de.</i>	To persuade to. ( <i>à une pers. de, &amp;c.</i> )
<i>Permettre de.</i>	To permit to. ( <i>à une pers. de, &amp;c.</i> )
<i>Se piquer de.</i>	To pretend to.
<i>Plaindre de.</i>	To pity for, and pr. p.
<i>Prescrire de.</i>	To prescribe to.
<i>Presser de.</i>	To press to.
<i>Prier de.</i>	To request to.
<i>Promettre de.</i>	To promise to. ( <i>à une pers. de, &amp;c.</i> )
<i>Proposer de.</i>	To recommend to. ( <i>à une pers. de, &amp;c.</i> )
<i>Se proposer de.</i>	
<i>Recommander de.</i>	To propose to. ( <i>à une pers. de, &amp;c.</i> )
<i>Refuser de.</i>	To refuse to.
<i>Regretter de.</i>	To regret, pr. p.
<i>Se réjouir de.</i>	To rejoice to.
<i>Remercier de.</i>	To thank for, and pr. p.
<i>Se repentir de.</i>	To repent, pr. p.
<i>Reprocher de.</i>	To reproach for, and pr. p.
<i>Résoudre de.</i>	To resolve to. ( <i>Se résoudre requires d.</i> )
<i>Risquer de.</i>	To risk, pr. p.
<i>Rougir de.</i>	To blush to.
<i>Solliciter de.</i>	To solicit to.
<i>Sommer de.</i>	To summon to.
<i>Se soucier de.</i>	To care. <i>Ne pas se soucier de</i> , Not to care, pr. p
<i>Souhaiter de.</i>	To wish to.
<i>Soupçonner de.</i>	To suspect of.
<i>Se souvenir de.</i>	To remember to.
<i>Suffire de.</i>	To be sufficient to.
<i>Suggérer de.</i>	To suggest to.
<i>Supplier de.</i>	To entreat to.
<i>Tâcher de.</i>	To endeavor to.
<i>Tarder de.*</i>	To long to.
<i>Se vanter de.</i>	To boast, pr. p.

\* *Tarder à une personne de faire une chose*, used as follows:

I long to go out, &c.—*Il me—il te—il lui—il nous—il vous—il leur, tarde de sortir.*

ADJECTIVES REQUIRING *de* BEFORE THE INFINITIVE.

<i>Affligé de.</i>	Afflicted to.	<i>Fâché de.</i>	Sorry to.
<i>Aisé de.</i>	Easy to.	<i>Heureux de.</i>	Happy to.
<i>Capable de.</i>	Capable of.	<i>Impossible de.</i>	Impossible to.
<i>Charmé de.</i>	Delighted to.	<i>Incapable de.</i>	Incapable of.
<i>Ravi de.</i>	Delighted to.	<i>Juste de.</i>	Just, right to.
<i>Content de.</i>	Content to.	<i>Lassé de.</i>	Tired, weary of.
<i>Curieux de.</i>	Curious to.	<i>Libre de.</i>	Free to.
<i>Doux de.</i>	Pleasant to.	<i>Nécessaire de.</i>	Necessary to.
<i>Ennuyé de.</i>	Tired of.	<i>Possible de.</i>	Possible to.
<i>Enragé de.</i>	Enraged at.	<i>Sûr de.</i>	Sure to.
<i>Étonné de.</i>	Astonished to.	<i>Surpris de.</i>	Surprised to.

APPLICATION.

- |   |   |  |
|---|---|--|
| <p>To abstain from.<br/>To accuse of.<br/>To finish, pr. p.<br/>To affect to.<br/>To afflict for.<br/>To be glad to.<br/>To fear to.<br/>To expect to.<br/>To warn to.<br/>To bethink one's self.<br/>To blame for.<br/>Capable of.<br/>To cease, pr. p.<br/>To charge with.<br/>Delighted with.<br/>To command to.<br/>To begin to.<br/>To entreat to.<br/>To advise to.<br/>To console for.<br/>Content to.<br/>To continue to.<br/>To convince of.<br/>To agree to.<br/>To fear to.<br/>Curious to.<br/>To discourage with.<br/>To forbid to.<br/>To make haste to.<br/>To despair, pr. p.<br/>To wish to.<br/>To determine to.<br/>To divert from.<br/>To defer, delay, pr. p.<br/>To tell to.<br/>To discontinue, pr. p.</p> | <p>1. If I should take it into my head to warn those men not to come before the usual hour, would you blame me for it?</p> <p>2. What do you advise me to do? Must I entreat my friends to come, or must I command them to remain where they are? I had resolved to cease writing to them; however, I will do what you advise me to do.</p> <p>3. I fear discouraging those young gentlemen if I forbid them studying before half-past eleven: would you forbid them studying as early as that if you were in my place?</p> | <p>I expect to see them here before the usual hour: you may warn them to come; I shall be glad to see them.</p> <p>Write them a few words, and tell them that if they continue to act as they do, you cannot expect to succeed in getting your money.</p> <p>If they have determined to study at that hour, I would not divert them from it: nevertheless I would tell them to recollect that it would be better for them to delay studying for the present.</p> |
|---|---|--|

To disown, pr. p.  
 To dispense with.  
 To dissuade from.  
 Pleasant to.  
 To write to.  
 To endeavor to.  
 To enjoin to.  
 To prevent from.  
 To be eager to.  
 Tired of.  
 Enraged at.  
 To undertake to.

To try to.  
 Astonished at.  
 To avoid, pr. p.  
 To excuse from.  
 To exempt from.  
 To exhort to.  
 To finish, pr. p.  
 To flatter one's self }  
                                   } with.  
 To care (not to).  
 To scold for.

To hasten to.  
 Happy to.  
 Impossible to.  
 Incapable of.  
 To think proper to.  
 To swear to.  
 Just to.  
 Tired of.  
 At liberty to.  
 To send word to.  
 To fail to.

To threaten to.  
 To deserve to.  
 Necessary to.  
 To neglect to.  
 To offer to.  
 To omit to.  
 To order to.  
 To forget to.  
 To forgive for.  
 To permit to.  
 To persuade to.  
 To pretend to.

To pity for.  
 Possible to.  
 To prescribe to.

4. Did I not hear you say this morning that you would write to your partner to come, in order that he might endeavor to prevent the sale of the fifty bales of cotton that have just been landed?

5. Your partner's clerks came here this morning, to try to excuse themselves from going to the counting-room this week. I was sorry to hear them offer the excuses they did. Would you not have been astonished also to hear them feign being indisposed?

6. The persons you were speaking about have sworn to pursue your parents and all your relatives. Do you not think it proper for me to write to the French Consul, who is the person most capable of giving you good advice?

7. If that young man did not pretend to know almost every thing, I would pardon him for not knowing thoroughly many things that he should know better. This morning I told him to write a letter in French: he could not.

8. Would not the whole city have rejoiced to learn that the general had requested the

You heard me say that I would write to him to come: nevertheless, after your departure I thought I could dispense with writing to him: the loss will be too great if the owners undertake to sell.

I certainly should have been astonished to hear them say that they were indisposed, knowing them to be well: I hope you took care not to admit their excuses.

Do, I beg of you: and send him word to come if he can, or if it be impossible for him to come, to send one of his clerks: he may think it proper to come himself: I hope he will.

All his relatives have tried to persuade him to study, and his parents have ordered him not to neglect his studies as he does. He threatens to run away if he is ordered to study more than one hour a day.

The merchants especially would have waited upon him to thank him for hav-

QUESTIONS.

ANSWERS.

To press to.  
To request to.  
To promise to.  
To propose to.  
To recommend to.  
To refuse to.  
To regret, pr. p.  
To rejoice, pr. p.  
To thank for.  
To repent of.  
To reproach for.  
To resolve to.  
To risk, pr. p.  
To blush to.  
Satisfied with.  
To solicit to.  
To summon to.  
To care to.  
To wish to.  
To suspect of.  
To remember to.  
To be sufficient to. }  
To suffice to. }  
To suggest to.  
Sure to.  
Surprised to.  
To endeavor to.  
To long to.  
To boast of.

citizens to present their petitions, although his predecessor had refused to receive them?

ing refused to sanction his predecessor's acts.

9. Did you remember to say that you did not care risking a return by the steamer you came out in, and also that you had summoned the Captain to answer the passengers' letter?

I told one of the owners whom I met this morning, that the passengers had resolved to commence a suit against the Captain.

10. Do you not long to tell that vain fellow that you are surprised to hear that he boasts being sure of succeeding in the affair you endeavored in vain to succeed in last month?

It is sufficient for me to know that he cannot succeed: I entreat you to say nothing about it.

---

LIST NO. 5.—VERBS AND ADJECTIVES REQUIRING THE PREPOSITION *d* BEFORE THE INFINITIVE.

<i>S'abaisser d.</i>	To stoop to.
<i>Accoutumer d.</i>	To accustom to.
<i>Admettre d.</i>	To admit to.
<i>Aider d.</i>	To help to.
<i>Aimer d.</i>	To like to.
<i>Amuser d.</i>	To amuse with, and pr. p.
<i>Animer d.</i>	To animate to.
<i>S'appliquer d.</i>	To apply to.
<i>Apprendre d.</i>	To learn to.
<i>S'apprêter d.</i>	To get ready to.
<i>Aspirer d.</i>	To aspire to.
<i>S'attacher d.</i>	To strive to.
<i>Autoriser d.</i>	To authorize to.
<i>Avoir d.</i>	To have to.

<i>Chercher à.</i>	To seek to.
<i>Condamner à.</i>	To condemn to.
<i>Condescendre à.</i>	To condescend to.
<i>Consister à.</i>	To consist in, pr. p.
<i>Contraindre à.</i>	To compel to.
<i>Contribuer à.</i>	To contribute to.
<i>Demander à.</i>	To ask to.
<i>Dépenser à.</i>	To spend in, pr. p.
<i>Destiner à.</i>	To destine to.
<i>Déterminer à.</i>	To determine to.
<i>Disposer à.</i>	To dispose to.
<i>Donner à.</i>	To give to.
<i>S'échauffer à.</i>	To get overheated in, pr. p.
<i>S'efforcer à, de.</i>	To endeavor to.
<i>S'employer à.</i>	To employ one's time in. To busy one's self in.
<i>Encourager à.</i>	To encourage to.
<i>Enhardir à.</i>	To embolden to.
<i>Enseigner à.</i>	To teach to.
<i>S'étudier à.</i>	To study to.
<i>Etre à.</i>	To be, pr. participle. ( <i>Elle est à coudre</i> ), She is sewing
<i>Exercer à.</i>	To exercise in.
<i>Exciter à.</i>	To excite to.
<i>Exposer à.</i>	To expose to.
<i>Se fatiguer à.</i>	To get tired, pr. p.
<i>Forcer à, de.</i>	To force to.
<i>Gagner à.</i>	To gain by, and pr. p.
<i>Habituer à.</i>	To accustom to.
<i>Hésiter à.</i>	To hesitate to.
<i>Inciter à.</i>	To incite to.
<i>Inviter à.</i>	To invite to.
<i>Manquer à, de.</i>	To omit, fail, pr. p.
<i>Se mettre à.</i>	To set about, pr. p.
<i>Montrer à.</i>	To show how to.
<i>Obliger à, de.</i>	To oblige to.
<i>S'obstiner à.</i>	To be obstinate in, pr. p.
<i>S'opiniâtrer à.</i>	To be obstinate in, pr. p.
<i>Parvenir à.</i>	To succeed in.
<i>Passer à.</i>	To spend in.
<i>Penser à.</i>	To think of (memory).
<i>Perdre à.</i>	To lose in, and pr. p.
<i>Persister à.</i>	To persist in, and pr. p.
<i>Se plaire à.</i>	To take pleasure in, and pr. p.
<i>Porter à.</i>	To incline, induce to.
<i>Se préparer à.</i>	To prepare to.



<i>Recommencer à.</i>	To begin again to.
<i>Renoncer à.</i>	To renounce, pr. p.
<i>Se résoudre à.</i>	To resolve to.
<i>Rester à.</i>	To remain, pr. p.
<i>Engager à.</i>	To engage, induce to.
<i>Réussir à.</i>	To succeed in, and pr. p.
<i>Servir à.</i>	To serve to.
<i>Songer à.</i>	To dream. To think of, and pr. p.
<i>Tarder à.</i>	To delay. To tarry, pr. p.
<i>Tendre à.</i>	To tend to.
<i>Travailler à.</i>	To work, labor to. To try to.
<i>Venir à.</i>	To happen to.

ADJECTIVES REQUIRING THE PREPOSITION *à* BEFORE THE INFINITIVE.

N. Many adjectives, according to the manner in which they are used, require the preposition *de* or *à* before a verb, viz., the preposition *de*, when the verb that follows the adjective in English is qualified by that adjective, and the preposition *à*, when the adjective qualifies a noun, either expressed or understood.

EXAMPLES.

It is good to eat fruit. (to eat fruit is good).	<i>Il est bon de manger du fruit.</i>
It is difficult to translate this phrase.	<i>Il est difficile de traduire cette phrase.</i>
It is good to eat moderately.	<i>Il est bon de manger modérément.</i>
That fruit is good to eat.	<i>Ce fruit-là est bon à manger.</i>
Good to eat! No, sir, it is not good to eat.	<i>Bon à manger ! non, monsieur, il n'est pas bon à manger.</i>

<i>Admirable à.</i>	Admirable to.	<i>Facile à.</i>	Easy to.
<i>Affreux à.</i>	Dreadful to.	<i>Habile à.</i>	Skilful in, pr. p.
<i>Agréable à.</i>	Pleasant to.	<i>Horrible à.</i>	Horrible to.
<i>Aisé à.</i>	Easy.	<i>Ingénieux à.</i>	Ingenious in.
<i>Assidu à.</i>	Assiduous in.	<i>Laid à.</i>	Ugly to.
<i>Beau à.</i>	Fine to.	<i>Lent à.</i>	Slow to.
<i>Bon à.</i>	Good to.	<i>Occupé à.</i>	Busy, pr. p.
<i>Charmant à.</i>	Charming to.	<i>Prêt à.</i>	Ready to.
<i>Désagréable à.</i>	Disagreeable to.	<i>Prompt à.</i>	Quick to.
<i>Difficile à.</i>	Difficult to.	<i>Propre à.</i>	Fit to.
<i>Diligent à.</i>	Diligent in, pr. p.	<i>Soigneux à.</i>	Careful to.
<i>Effroyable à.</i>	Frightful to.	<i>Sujet à.</i>	Subject, apt to.
<i>Enclin à.</i>	Inclined to.	<i>Terrible à.</i>	Terrible to.
<i>Exact à.</i>	Exact in, pr. p.		

## LIST NO. 5.—APPLICATION.

## EPISTOLARY FORMS.

## Answer.

Good to.  
 Charming to.  
 To seek to.  
 To condemn to.  
 To condescend to.  
 To consist in.  
 To compel to.  
 To contribute to  
 To ask to.  
 To spend in.

3. Paris, Jan. 1st, 1852.

Dear Sir:

I write to ask why your lawyer seems to seek to condemn the steps I have advised you to follow. Be quick in answering, and believe me,

Your most obed't ser't,

J. LENOIR.

R. LEBLANC, ESQ.,  
 London.

London, Jan. 5th, 1852.

Dear Sir:

In answer to your letter of the 1st inst., I have to say that the person to whom you allude is no longer my lawyer. We could not agree, since he wished to compel me to act contrary to your advice. On many occasions he would not condescend to listen to me.

Yours respectfully,

R. LEBLANC.

J. LENOIR, ESQ.

Paris.

To stoop to.  
 To accustom to.  
 To admit to.  
 Wonderful to.  
 Dreadful to.  
 Agreeable to.  
 To help to.  
 To like to.  
 Easy to.  
 To amuse one's self with.

1. Would you not like to help me to hang up these pictures?

If I had time I would, but I think you ought to amuse yourself with touching them up a little before hanging them up. They want cleaning also: if you will wait, I will help you to clean them to-morrow.

To animate to.  
 To apply to.  
 To learn to.  
 To get ready to.  
 To aspire to.  
 Assiduous in.  
 To stick to.  
 To authorize to.  
 To have to.

2. Recollect that before getting ready to go out, you have to write a letter to authorize me to receive the sum your brother told you to get collected.

I have many other things to do before going out. I shall not be able to get ready to go out before three quarters of an hour; meanwhile you may get the writing materials ready.

## Answer.

Last to.  
 Disagreeable to.  
 To destine to.  
 To resolve upon.  
 Difficult to.  
 Diligent to.  
 To dispose to.  
 To give to.

4. Phila., Feb. 2d, 1852.

Dear Brother:

I have to inform you of a disagreeable circumstance. This morning we resolved to send away our two clerks, and you know they will be difficult to replace. I wish

Baltimore, Feb. 4th, '52.

Dear Brother:

I should have been the last to part with the clerks who have been so long with you but since you have thought proper to do so, I send you my head clerk. You may

To overheat one's self in.

To endeavor to.

to know whether you would be disposed to let your first clerk remain with me a few days. Favor me with an answer as soon as possible and believe me,

Your affectionate brother,  
S. LEBRUN.

T. LEBRUN,  
Baltimore.

keep him one week, but do not give him too much to do.

Yours devotedly,  
T. LEBRUN

S. LEBRUN,  
Philadelphia.

Frightful to.  
To employ } in.  
To use }  
To encourage to.  
Inclined to.  
To induce to.  
To embolden to.  
To teach to.  
To study to.  
To be, pr. p.

5. New Orleans, Mar. 6, 1858.  
Dear Cousin:

My Italian master encourages me so much to continue studying, that I wish you to employ the money I left with you, in purchasing the best Italian and French Dictionary you can find. Send it me by the bearer of this and believe me,

Your affectionate cousin,  
SOPHIA LEVERT.

Answer.

New York, April 7th, 1858  
Dear Cousin:

I am glad to hear you are encouraged to pursue the study of the language of Tasso and of Dante. I could not send the dictionaries by the bearer of your letter, because I could not induce him to stay longer than a week here. You will receive them by the first steamer.

Your ever affectionate,  
EMILY LEGRIS

Exact to, in.  
To exercise in.  
To excite to.  
To expose to.  
Easy to.  
To get tired with.  
To force to.  
To gain by.  
Clever in.  
To accustom to.  
To hesitate to.

6. Versailles, May 7, 1852.  
Dear Sister:

Why are you not more exact in answering my letters? You force me to write again to tell you that you must not hesitate to come and see me before the 20th of this month. I shall expect you.

Your affectionate sister,  
JULIE LEBEAU.

Answer.

Lyons, May 11th, 1852.  
Dear Julia:

You have always accustomed me to so much indulgence that I put off writing to you for a few days. As to hesitating going to see you, you know I never hesitate doing so whenever I can; so you may expect me on the 20th, unless I am forced to remain by some unexpected circumstance.

Your ever loving sister,  
MARIE LEBEAU.

Horrid to.  
To incite to.  
Ingenious in.

7. Marseilles, June 12th, 1852.  
Dear Captain:

I am told your Colonel has invited you to set about learning English, and as I imagine

Answer.

Bordeaux, July 14th, 1852.  
Dear Major:

Do not accuse me of negligence if I have been slow to answer your letter of the

Ugly to.  
Slow to.  
To omit to.  
To set about, pr. p.  
To show how to.  
To oblige to.

you will want a good grammar, I send you the one I used when I was obliged to study the language. Let me know how you are and believe me,

Yours truly,  
A. MANGEFEU.

12th of last month. The excellent grammar you sent me incites me to study. I thank you most sincerely for the attention, and remain,

Your affectionate friend,  
B. CRACHEPOUDRE.

Answer.

Busy in.  
To be obstinate in.  
To succeed in. }  
To arrive at. }  
To spend in.  
To think of.  
To lose in.  
To persist in.  
To delight in.  
To induce to.

8. Rouen, Aug. 16th, 1852.  
Messrs. Durieu & Co.,  
Brest.

Gentlemen:

We beg of you to lose no time in remitting to us the invoice of the goods you received by the last steamer.

Your most obd't servants,  
V. LEBEL & Co.

Brest, Sept. 26th, 1852.  
Messrs. V. Lebel & Co.,  
Rouen.

Gentlemen:

We lose no time in sending you the invoice you demand. By the way, have you thought of the affair we mentioned in our last? If you have, please let us know what you think of the speculation.

Yours respectfully,  
DURIEU & Co.

Answer.

First to.  
To prepare to.  
Ready to.  
Quick to.  
Fit to.  
To begin ag. to.  
To renounce to.  
To resolve to.  
To remain to.  
To succeed in.

9. Havre, Oct. 18th, 1853.  
Dear Sister:

I write a few words in haste to say that I am preparing to sail for the U. S. I have determined to renounce house-keeping here for the present. If you cannot succeed in getting rid of your furniture, leave it with a confidential person and get ready immediately to join me here before the 25th.

Your devoted brother,  
LOUIS DE LUSSAN.

Paris, Oct. 20th, 1853  
Dear Brother:

Upon the receipt of your letter I lost no time in following your instructions. I have succeeded in disposing of the furniture for what it cost me, and I am very happy to announce to you that I shall be ready to leave Paris before the 25th inst. Indeed I shall be the first of all the family to embrace you and congratulate you upon your change of fortune.

Your affectionate sister,  
LOUISA DE LUSSAN.

Answer.

To serve to.  
Careful to.  
To think of.  
Subject to.  
Apt to.  
To aim at.

10. Toulon, Nov. 30th, 1851.  
Dear Friend:

The money you remitted a few days ago has served to pay off the debts your brother had contracted in this city.

Lyons, Dec. 10th, 1853.  
Dear Arthur:

Enclosed you will find a draft for frs. 150.00 on Messrs. Dubusquet & Co., to your order at 10 days' sight.

To delay, p. p.  
To tend to.  
Terrible to.  
To work to.  
To come to.

There remains nevertheless  
a small balance of 150 francs.  
Do not delay remitting this  
small sum as soon as pos-  
sible: you will oblige greatly,  
Your affectionate friend,

ARTHUR LEGRAND.

When I think of the sums  
I have already disbursed  
and that I still may have to  
disburse for my brother, I  
tremble for the future. If  
these sacrifices tended to re-  
pair his fortunes, I should  
not complain: it seems, on  
the contrary, that all my ef-  
forts only serve to increase  
his prodigality.

Yours most truly,

PIERRE LEROUX.

LIST NO. 6.—VERBS REQUIRING NO PREPOSITION BEFORE THE INFINITIVE THAT  
FOLLOWS THEM.

<i>Aimer mieux.</i>	To prefer. To like better. (See Remark 1.)
<i>Aller.</i>	To go.
<i>Apercevoir.</i>	To perceive.
<i>Assurer.</i>	To assert.
<i>Croire.</i>	To believe.
<i>Compter.</i>	To purpose. To intend. To expect.
<i>Daigner.</i>	To deign.
<i>Déclarer.</i>	To declare.
<i>Devoir.</i>	To be to (lit. to owe). He is to go, <i>Il doit aller.</i> (See Remark 3.)
<i>Entendre.</i>	To hear.
<i>Envoyer.</i>	To send. <i>Envoyer chercher. Envoyer dire.</i>
<i>Espérer.</i>	To expect.
<i>Falloir.</i>	To be necessary.
<i>S'imaginer.</i>	To fancy.
<i>Laisser.</i>	To let.
<i>Oser.</i>	To dare.
<i>Paraître.</i>	To appear.
<i>Penser.</i>	} To have like (lit. to think). To be near, pr. p.
<i>Manquer.</i>	
<i>Prétendre.</i>	To pretend.
<i>Pouvoir.</i>	To be able.
<i>Reconnaître.</i>	To acknowledge.
<i>Regarder.</i>	To look at.
<i>Retourner.</i>	To return.
<i>Savoir.</i>	To know.
<i>Sembler.</i>	To seem.
<i>Souhaiter.</i>	To wish. (See Remark 2.)
<i>Soutenir.</i>	To maintain.
<i>Valoir mieux.</i>	To be better. (See Remark 1.)



<i>Venir.</i>	To come.
<i>Voir.</i>	To see.
<i>Vouloir.</i>	To wish. To be willing.

## REMARKS.

1. *Aimer mieux* and *Valoir mieux.*

To prefer. To be better,—

followed by verbs in the infinitive, require *de* before the second infinitive, as:

<i>J'aimerais mieux rester que d'y aller.</i>	I would rather stay than go.
<i>Il vaut mieux y aller que de rester seul.</i>	It is better to go than to stay alone.

2. *Souhaiter* may be used with *de*, as:

<i>Je souhaite de le voir.</i>	I wish to see him.
--------------------------------	--------------------

3. Where are you to go this morning?	I am to go to the store.
Is your brother to come here soon?	He is to come very soon.
Were you not to return with me?	I was not.

Are you to?—I am to—&c., not being used here in their natural or literal sense, but expressing *duty, obligation, previous arrangement*, the French construe with the verb *devoir* (to owe), thus:

<i>Où devez-vous aller ce matin?</i>	<i>Je dois aller au magasin.</i>
<i>Vote frère doit-il venir ici bientôt?</i>	<i>Il doit venir bientôt.</i>
<i>Ne deviez-vous pas revenir avec moi?</i>	<i>Je ne devais pas revenir avec vous.</i>

## APPLICATION.

To prefer.	1. Would they not prefer re-	They would rather return
To like better.	turning?	than stay here.
To go.	2. When will you go and	We will go and take a sail if
	take a walk?	you will come with us.
To perceive.	3. I perceive them walking,	I do not perceive them walk-
To hear.	do you?	ing; I hear them speaking.
To assert.	4. Does he not assert having	He asserts having called upon
	written to you?	your brother-in-law.
To believe.	5. They thought (believed)	They thought they had, but I
	they had deceived you,	am not so easily deceived.
	did they not?	
To purpose.	6. You purpose buying the	We purpose buying them
	goods in the spring, do	during the summer.
	you not?	
To deign.	7. Did he deign to tell you	He did not deign even to
	when he would return?	look at me.
To declare.	8. The witnesses declared	They declared having seen
	having seen them enter	them leave it.
	the house, did they not?	



To be to. To send for.	9. What is he to send for; the books or the fur- niture?	He is to send for the fur- niture.
To hear.	10. Did you ever hear them speak?	I never did.
To be to. To send for. To go for.	11. Were they not to send for the boats?	No, sir, they were to send for the sails. They went for the boats this morning.
To expect.	12. What do you expect to do next winter?	I expect to study French, Spanish, and Italian.
To be necessary. To be able.	13. What must be done to assist him?	We can do nothing now.
To imagine.	14. He imagines he can do that, does he not?	He does, but we all know that he cannot.
To be willing.	15. Let him read; do not hinder him.	We will let him read, if he will let us write.
To like better. To prefer.	16. Your brother would like better to play than to study, would he not?	He always likes to play bet- ter than to study; he does not seem to know that it is better to study than to play.
To look at.	17. When you called me what were you looking at?	I was looking at the soldiers pass. Did you not hear the drums beating?
To prefer. To have rather. To be better.	18. You would rather stay than go, would you not?	I would rather go than stay; it is better to go than to stay here alone.
To like better. To prefer.	19. Did you not like to read better than to write?	I have always liked to write better than to read.
To come.	20. Do you not see my sister coming?	I do not; I see your aunt coming.
To dare. To deny.	21. Will they dare confess hav- ing written without your consent?	They will deny having writ- ten.
To seem.	22. Does she seem to under- stand what is said to her?	She seems to understand but she will not answer.
To be to.	23. What are you to do, to- morrow?	I am to sell the goods and return to the store early.
To have like to. } To be near. }	24. He was near falling a mo- ment ago, was he not?	He was, he would have fal- len had I not been near him.
To pretend.	25. Do you pretend to know the news?	I do not pretend to know the news you allude to.

To acknowledge.	26. Does he acknowledge having said it ?	He acknowledges having spoken of the affair several times.
To be able.	27. When you met him a week ago at your uncle's, what did he say ?	He told me he could not tell me how much money he owed you, but that he would tell your brother.
To look at.	28. When I called you what were you looking at ?	I was looking at the sailors pass.
To return.	29. When will you return to see us ?	We shall return to see you the 11th of next month.
To know.	30. Do you know how to look for a word in the dictionary ?	I believe so : what word do you wish me to look for ?
To wish.		
To seem.	31. You seem to be afraid of coming in ; come in, why do you not ?	Come, come, you are jesting, you know that I do not wish to come in : if I did I would.
To wish.		
To maintain.	32. He maintains he has read the letter; do you believe him ?	I do not : I maintain he has not.
To be better.	33. Is it not better to start now than remain until it is quite dark ?	I think it is better to start now.
To be able.	34. Will you come and see me late or early ?	I shall not be able to come before half-past eleven.
To see.	35. Do you see anybody coming ?	I see nobody coming now.
To be willing.	36. If he will not pay for the books, send them back to me.	I have just received a letter from him : he says he would have paid for them a month ago, if he had known where to write to you.
To prefer.	I prefer selling them to somebody else.	
To intend.	37. Who intends to go and take a walk after breakfast ?	Nobody does ; we all intend to go to your cousin's after dinner, unless you prefer going after tea.
To go.		
To be to.	38. What are you going to do in the course of the afternoon ?	I was to go and visit your brother's patients, but he wrote to me a moment ago that he intended going to see them himself.
To intend.		
To be to.	39. Where do you intend to board ?	I was to board at Mrs. Blanchard's, but as I have just

been told that she has no more room in her house, I am to board where you were to board last year.

To like better. 40. Do you like staying here I do.  
To prefer. better than going out?

## N O . X X I .

### Use of the Subjunctive,

EXEMPLIFIED IN NINE GENERAL CASES.

No. 1. The Verbs:

<i>Aimer mieux.</i>	To like better.	To prefer. <i>Préférer.</i>	To prefer.
<i>Approuver.</i>	To approve.	<i>Souhaiter.</i>	To wish.
<i>Consentir.</i>	To consent.	<i>Souffrir.</i>	{ *To suffer.
<i>Défendre.</i>	To forbid.	<i>Supporter.</i>	
<i>Désirer.</i>	To desire.	<i>Trouver bon.</i>	To think it right.
<i>Demander.</i>	To demand. To ask.	<i>Trouver mauvais.</i>	To think it wrong.
<i>Exiger.</i>	To require.	<i>Trouver à propos.</i>	To think it proper.
<i>Ordonner.</i>	To order.	<i>S'étonner.</i>	To be astonished.
<i>Permettre.</i>	To permit.	<i>Vouloir.</i>	To wish. To want,—

as well as any other verbs, or any other portions of a leading phrase used in the sense of the preceding verbs, to express—

Wish or will,	Consent,	Doubt,	Hindrance,
Surprise,	Prohibition,	Contradiction,	Fear,
Astonishment,	Command,	Expectation,	Apprehension,

require that the verb in the *subordinate* or *consecutive* part of the sentence should be put in the *subjunctive*. *Que* must be used after the *leading clause* in every instance, without any regard to the English construction, as:

I deny your having arrived first. *Je nie que vous soyez arrivé le premier.*

In order to determine in which tense of the subjunctive to put the verb that follows the *que*, observe the following rules:

RULE 1. When the *first* verb is in the *present* or *future* of the indicative, the verb which follows the *que* must be in the *subjunctive present*, as:

<i>Je veux que vous le sachiez.</i>	I wish you to know it.
<i>Il voudra que vous le sachiez.</i>	He will wish you to know it.
<i>Nous permettons qu'il aille.</i>	We permit him to go.
<i>Nous exigerons que vous veniez.</i>	We shall require you to come.

RULE 2d. When the *First* verb is in either of the *Past Tenses* or in either of the *Conditionals*, put the *Second* verb in the *Imperfect of the Subjunctive*, as:

\* When used in the sense of *to tolerate*.

<i>Il a exigé</i>	} <i>que vous le sussiez.</i>	He required you to know it.
<i>Il exigeait</i>		
<i>Il exigea</i>		
<i>Il exigerait que vous le sussiez.</i>		He would require you to know it.
<i>Il aurait exigé</i>	} <i>que vous parlassiez.</i>	He would have required you to speak.
<i>Il eût exigé</i>		

N. B. It must be remembered that the verbs under the present Rule, require the Subjunctive, whether used affirmatively or otherwise.

#### APPLICATION.

1. I deny your having arrived first.
2. I approve of your taking precautions against the bad faith of your debtors.
3. All your friends will be surprised at your having left the Capital without taking leave of your relatives.
4. Your brother wishes to enter the army: I should prefer his entering the navy.
5. Your father consents that you should take a trip to Paris with me next year.
6. I have forbidden my servants to allow him to enter my house.
7. That man asks to be permitted to rest a moment.
8. If you wish me to go and see you, do me the favor to send me your carriage.
9. My mother requires me to be up every day before six.
10. The President has wished that the witnesses be heard.
11. The king has allowed the ambassadors to be introduced.
12. This morning you wished me to tell you the truth; I will tell it you now without any disguise whatever.
13. My mother wished me to write to you to express her dissatisfaction.
14. That man is so cowardly that he suffers himself to be abused; he would even suffer himself to be beaten.
15. You say that you thought it wrong that I should have taken your son to the theatre.
16. I am astonished that your son should not see the danger to which he is exposed.
17. My wish is that you should remain at your boarding-school until vacation.
18. This morning the colonel gave the order that the regiment should march on the first or second of March.
19. If your intention is to be admitted into good society, you will think it proper for me to tell you to behave better than you do.
20. Will you allow me to go and see him and buy the books?
21. I will allow you to go and see him, but I cannot allow you to purchase such books.

---

#### NO. 2. THE LEADING VERB USED NEGATIVELY.

Leading verbs and clauses not expressing contradiction, hindrance, command, doubt,

*consent, prohibition, expectation, will, fear or apprehension*, do not require the subordinate verb following the *que* to be put in the subjunctive, unless used *negatively*, when the subordinate verb must be put in the subjunctive.

Ex. *Je pense qu'il viendra.*

I think he will come.

*Je ne pense pas qu'il vienne.*

I do not think he will come.

#### APPLICATION.

1. He has no longer a sore hand; I think he can write now.
2. His hand is sore; I do not think he can write before next week.
3. I believe your father will consent to your marriage with my cousin.
4. I do not believe that your father will consent to your marriage.
5. She suspects the thieves will enter the house, but she does not suspect that you know that they are to enter it.
6. You say that he knows his lessons, do you not?
7. As I never supposed that he knew them, I do not think I said so; if I did I have forgotten it.
8. It is certain your mother will come this morning.
9. It is not certain that she will come.
10. It is presumed that the governor will respite him.
11. People do not presume that he will respite him.
12. It appears that he set out this morning.
13. It does not appear that he set out.

---

#### No. 3.—LEADING VERB USED INTERROGATIVELY.

The verb of the subordinate proposition is put in the subjunctive when the leading verb, followed by *que*, is *Interrogative*, because phrases of this nature express doubt, uncertainty, &c.

But if the interrogation be used to ascertain whether the person interrogated possesses the knowledge of a circumstance that has occurred, that is certain, and concerning which there can be no doubt, the *subordinate* verb is put in the indicative.

#### APPLICATION.

##### INTERROGATIVE VERB FOLLOWED BY SUBJUNCTIVE.

1. Is it certain that your brother will go to town this winter?
2. Do you think your sister will come to Paris before the end of the month?

##### INTERROGATIVE VERB FOLLOWED BY INDICATIVE.

1. Do you know that your brother has been in town these three days?
2. Have you been told that your sister will be here before the end of the summer?



- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 3. How could I have suspected that they would get angry?         | 3. Did you learn this morning that they got angry beyond any doubt? |
| 4. Do you presume it will be warmer to-morrow than it is to-day? | 4. Do you perceive that it is much warmer to-day than yesterday?    |

No. 4.—The verb *être*, followed by an adjective or a participle expressing an emotion of the mind, such as *joy*, *discontent*, *indignation*, &c., requires the subjunctive after the *que* in the subordinate clause.

### APPLICATION.

#### LEADING PHRASE.

- |                        |  |
|------------------------|--|
| <i>Être bien aise.</i> | 1. I am very glad that you have heard from him.  |
| <i>Être satisfait.</i> | 2. I am satisfied that you have followed my counsels.  |
| <i>Être content.</i>   | 3. I am content that your sister is gone.  |
| <i>Être fâché.</i>     | 4. I was sorry that you were sick.   |
| <i>Être indigné.</i>   | 5. I am full of indignation that the crew has behaved so badly.  |
| <i>Être outré.</i>     |  |
| <i>Être heureux.</i>   | 6. I am happy that you have succeeded in getting the books back through your agent. ( <i>Se faire rendre une chose par une personne.</i> ) |

#### SUBJUNCTIVE AFTER IMPERSONAL VERBS.

No.—5. The subordinate verb is put in the subjunctive after impersonal verbs, or verbs used impersonally, such as :

<i>Il est.</i>	It is.	<i>Il est à désirer.</i>	It is desirable.
<i>Il faut.</i>	It is necessary.	<i>Il est à propos.</i>	It is proper.
<i>Il importe.</i>	It matters, is important.	<i>Il est temps.</i>	It is time.
		<i>Il est juste.</i>	It is right.
<i>Il convient.</i>	It is suitable.	&c.	&c.
<i>Il suffit.</i>	It is sufficient.		
<i>Il vaut mieux.</i>	It is better.	We must except, however, the impersonal verbs:	
<i>Il plaît à.</i>	It pleases.		
<i>Il est possible.</i>	It is possible.	<i>Il résulte.</i>	It results.
<i>Il se peut.</i>		<i>Il paraît.</i>	It appears.
<i>Il peut se faire.</i>	It may be.	<i>Il s'ensuit.</i>	It follows.

And likewise all impersonal forms in the composition of which there is an adjective or participle expressing an idea of positiveness, such as :

<i>Il est certain.</i>	It is certain.	<i>Il est vrai.</i>	It is true.
<i>Il est évident.</i>	It is evident.	<i>Il est sûr.</i>	It is sure.
<i>Il est constant.</i>	It is unquestionable.	<i>Il est prouvé.</i>	It is proved.



<i>Il est à croire.</i> }	It is to be believed.	<i>Il est avéré.</i>	It is averred.
<i>Il est croyable.</i> }		<i>Il est assuré.</i>	It is assured.
<i>Il est visible.</i>	It is visible.	<i>Il est reconnu.</i>	It is known.
<i>Il est presumable.</i>	It is presumable.	<i>Il est convenu.</i>	It is agreed.
<i>Il est probable.</i>	It is probable.	&c.	&c.
<i>Il est apparent.</i>	It is apparent.		

These verbs and impersonal modes of speech require the subordinate verb to be put in the indicative, unless used *negatively or interrogatively*.

### APPLICATION.

#### SUBJUNCTIVE.

#### INDICATIVE.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. When we live in abundance, it is rare that we attend to the misery of those around us.</li> <li>2. To avoid complaints, everybody must do his duty.</li> <li>3. It is suitable that you should go and speak to them.</li> <li>4. It is important that your father should be informed immediately of your illness.</li> <li>5. It was fortunate for the crew that the captain was an experienced sailor.</li> <li>6. It is queer that you arrived at the very moment when I was assured you were a hundred miles off.</li> <li>7. It will suffice, without doubt, for you to know the will of your father, to hasten to do his bidding.</li> <li>8. It pleased your mother that her servants should be in her room every morning at half-past eleven, did it not?</li> <li>9. If it pleased your father to have the trees cut down, you would be obliged to do it.</li> <li>10. It is unfortunate that your brother does not know Latin.</li> <li>11. Your uncle may come to see me to-morrow.</li> <li>12. Your cousin is going to enter the army; it would be better for him to enter the navy.</li> </ol> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. It is certain that that man who lives in abundance does not attend to the wants of those around him.</li> <li>2. Since nobody complains, it results that everybody does his duty.</li> <li>3. I went yesterday; it results that they are satisfied.</li> <li>4. It is unquestionable that your father is informed of your recovery.</li> <li>5. The crew is well commanded; it is true that the captain is an experienced sailor.</li> <li>6. It is averred that I arrived at the very moment when I was thought to be two hundred leagues off.</li> <li>7. It is to be presumed that when you know the will of your father, you will hasten to do his bidding.</li> <li>8. It is known by everybody that your mother wished her servants to be in the kitchen every morning before six.</li> <li>9. It is probable that your father will have the trees cut down, if you do not do it yourself.</li> <li>10. It is notorious that your brother does not know a word of Latin.</li> <li>11. It is agreed that your uncle will call upon you next week.</li> <li>12. Your brother does not like the army; it is certain that the career of arms does not suit him.</li> </ol> |
|---|--|

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 13. It is proper that that young man should be warned not to part with his books.<br>14. I may receive the order in the course of the month. | 13. It is presumable that he was warned in time not to part with his books.<br>14. It appears that you have received the order. |
|--|---|
- 
- |   |   |
|---|---|
| INDICATIVE.   | SUBJUNCTIVE.  |
| 15. It results from the information that they have received the order.<br>16. It appears that the order was countermanded.<br>17. It follows from this that they will come. | 15. It does not result from the information that the order was sent.<br>16. It does not appear that the order was countermanded.<br>17. It does not follow from this that they will come. |

---

No. 6.—USE OF SUBJUNCTIVE AFTER THE RELATIVES *qui, que, dont* AND *où*.

The above relatives govern the subjunctive in four different cases.

*First case.*

When preceded by a superlative relative, by its nature expressing the superiority of the thing spoken of in the highest degree, as:

<i>Le plus beau,</i>	The finest.	<i>Le moindre,</i>	The least.
<i>Le plus fort,</i>	The strongest.	<i>Le meilleur,</i>	The best.
<i>Le plus grand,</i>	The greatest.	<i>Le moins fort,</i>	The least strong
<i>Le moins beau,</i>	The least handsome.	<i>Le plus petit,</i>	The smallest.
&c.		&c.	

APPLICATION.

1. The noblest virtue a man can possess is beneficence.
2. The most honorable reward that a virtuous and truly patriotic general expects from his fellow-citizens is their esteem.
3. Your sister is the wittiest lady that I know
4. The best pistols I have seen are of American manufacture.
5. There are many bodies in the heavens, but the sun is the largest we perceive.
6. The Cid is the best tragedy we have, and the Tartuffe is the finest comedy Molière ever wrote.
7. The movements of the planets are the most regular that we know.
8. The shortest course you have to take is to leave the country.
9. He charges high for the least thing he does.
10. Your idleness is the least thing your master complains of.
11. The healthiest country your sister can be taken to is Italy.
12. France is the most military nation there is in Europe.
13. This horse is the strongest that has reached the camp.

*Exception.*

If, however, the superlative is followed by a regimen indirect, the indicative must be used.

APPLICATION.

14. The sun is the largest of the bodies that we perceive in the heavens.
15. This tortoise is the largest of all those which have reached this country.
16. This tree is the tallest of all those that I have seen.
17. Your niece is the most beautiful of all the women that I know.

NO. 7.—USE OF SUBJUNCTIVE AFTER THE RELATIVES, *qui*, *que*, *dont* AND *où*.

*Second case.*

The verb following one of the relative pronouns *qui*, *que*, *dont* and *où*, is put in the subjunctive whenever those relatives are preceded by one of the following indefinite pronouns:

<i>Personne</i> ,	Nobody.	<i>Quelque</i> ,	Any.
<i>Pas un</i> ,	Not one.	<i>Rien</i> ,	Nothing.
<i>Aucun</i> ,	No (before noun).	<i>Qui que ce soit</i> ,	Whoever, whomsoever.

And likewise before the following modes of speech:

<i>Il n'y a aucun</i> (noun) <i>quelconque</i> .	There is no (noun) whatever.
<i>Il n'y a</i> (noun) <i>quelconque</i> .	<i>id.</i> <i>id.</i>
<i>Il n'y a que</i> .	There is only, but.
<i>Il n'y a rien</i> .	} There is nothing.
<i>Il n'est rien</i> .	
<i>Il n'y a aucun</i> .	There is none.
<i>Il n'y a guère</i> .	There are but few.
<i>Il y a peu</i> .	There are few.
<i>Il n'y a point</i> or <i>pas</i> .	There is or are no (noun). There is or are none.

APPLICATION.

1. I know nobody who is as happy as you, and who at the same time takes so much pleasure in complaining.
2. Your father is so sensible that there exists nobody whose advice and approbation should be more sought after; I know nobody who values honest people more than he.
3. There is no reason whatever that can oblige me to leave you.
4. You complain of that young man, I know not why, for I have seen nothing that can be blamed in his conduct.
5. Do you know any person who is of this opinion?
6. Of whomsoever you speak, avoid slander.
7. There is nothing on the earth that is not for the use of *man*.
8. There is nothing that I will not do to oblige you.

9. It is only the beneficent being that can know the happiness that is enjoyed in relieving the unfortunate.
10. Whoever sends for me, you will say that I am too busy to appear.
11. There is no power whatever that will oblige me to do that.
12. Among all the brave men who have honored their country, there is not one who has more right to our admiration than your general.
13. There is scarcely any other but you who can get me out of the scrape.
14. There are few women who do not take pleasure in hearing themselves flattered; there are none who complain of a compliment.
15. There are but few American soldiers who are not ready to sacrifice their lives for their country.
16. There are few wines that please me as much as these.
17. There is no country where people enjoy greater liberty than in the United States; it is only in that country that the people are truly independent.
18. I know no man who is as versed as he in the dead languages.

NO. 8.—USE OF SUBJUNCTIVE AFTER THE RELATIVES *qui, que, dont* AND *où*.

*Third case.*

The verb following one of the relatives *qui, que, dont* and *où*, is put in the subjunctive when these relatives are preceded by one of the ordinal numbers, *le premier, le second, le troisième*, &c., or by one of the adjectives, *le seul, l'unique*, the only or the only one.

APPLICATION.

1. You blame your uncle's conduct; you are the first not to do him justice.
2. Out of one hundred friends that I have in this city, you are the first that I have met for three months.
3. He is not the first man whom I have seen sacrifice his interests to his self-love.
4. Of all his friends, can you be the only one upon whom I cannot rely?
5. Your sister is the only woman in this city that does not give occasion to speak of her.
6. Seize this opportunity, the only one you will be able to find.
7. Burgundy is not the only country where good wine is made.
8. It may be said that the dog is the only animal whose fidelity is unshaken.

NO. 9.—USE OF SUBJUNCTIVE AFTER THE RELATIVES *qui, que, dont* AND *où*.

*Fourth case.*

The verb following one of the relatives *qui, que, dont* and *où*, is put in the subjunctive, when by this verb we wish to express something involving *doubt, uncertainty or futurity*.

When the verb following one of these relatives expresses something positive, such verb is put in the indicative.

APPLICATION.

RELATIVES FOLLOWED BY SUBJUNCTIVE.

1. He wishes a peace with which every party shall be satisfied, which shall put an end to all jealousies, which shall appease all resentments, and which shall cure all distrust.
2. Who is the man who will make the sacrifice of his interests to the friendship or the love of his neighbor?
3. You believe, perhaps, that you are the only person from whom I can expect assistance.
4. Could our enemies name a single man who would not be ready to sacrifice his life in this cause?
5. You must give your father reasons that will appear plausible to him.
6. I should like very much to be acquainted with a guide who could conduct me to the Rocky Mountains.
7. I am looking for an instructor who shall be willing to take charge of my son.
8. When I shall be old, I shall retire to some country place where I may live quietly.
9. If you marry, choose rather a wife without fortune whom you may love, than a rich woman who may be indifferent to you.
10. Shall I find upon this road a hotel where I can put up?

RELATIVES FOLLOWED BY INDICATIVE.

1. He will make a peace with which all parties will be satisfied, which will put an end to all jealousies, which will extinguish all resentments, and which will banish all distrust.
2. The honest man is the one who makes the sacrifice of his interests to the love of his neighbor.
3. I apply to you as to the only person from whom I can positively expect assistance.
4. I could name thousands of men who would not sacrifice their property in that cause.
5. I shall give my father reasons that will appear plausible to him.
6. I know a guide who will be able to conduct you to the Rocky Mountains.
7. I have found an instructor who is kind enough to take charge of my son for the present.
8. When I shall be old, I shall retire to my country-seat, where I will live quietly.
9. If I marry, I shall choose rather a wife without fortune, whom I shall love, than a rich wife who would be indifferent to me.
10. You will find upon this road an inn where you will be able to put up.



## NO. XXII.

## COURSE OF IDIOMS.

The following short course of idiomatical expressions, in which the learner is apt to be mistaken, has been introduced during the last course of instruction, principally with a view to accustom him to analyze French idiomatical turns of phrase differing widely from the English forms used to express the same idea.

NO. 1.—PEOPLE, *Peuple, Gens, Personnes, Monde.*

*People*, meaning that aggregate body of human beings that compose a nation, is expressed by *peuple*; as:

The French people.	<i>Le peuple français.</i>
The will of the people.	<i>La volonté du peuple.</i>

*People* is also said of that number of persons without dignity who compose the multitude; as:

An insurrection of the people.	<i>Un soulèvement du peuple.</i>
--------------------------------	----------------------------------

*People*, used to denote a certain number of individuals, is expressed by *gens, personnes* or *monde*; as:

There are a great many people in the street. *Il y a beaucoup de monde dans la rue.*

But observe that *gens* is not used after a definite number; we do not say, *deux ou trois gens*,—two or three people; we say, *deux ou trois personnes*, except when *gens* is attended by an adjective; as:

Two or three honest people.	<i>Deux ou trois honnêtes gens.</i>
Five or six young men.	<i>Cinq ou six jeunes gens.</i>

Observe also, that when *gens* is attended by an adjective, that adjective must be feminine if it comes before *gens*, and masculine, if it comes after; as:

Good people.	<i>De bonnes gens.</i>
Civil people.	<i>Des gens civils.</i>
Old people are suspicious.	<i>Les vieilles gens sont soupçonneux.</i>

## APPLICATION.

## No. 1.—PEOPLE.

## QUESTIONS.

## ANSWERS.

Was not the president elected by the will of the people?	He was elected by a great majority, six months after the first insurrection of the people.
Were there many people at the theatre last night?	There were more people in the street than in the house.
Old people are suspicious, are they not?	They are generally so, but it would be wrong to say that they are all so.
How many young people do you know?	I know seven or eight young people in this vicinity; your brother knows two charming young ladies.



No. 2.—COUNTRY, *Pays, Campagne, Patrie, Contrée.*

*Pays* is said of a large extent of country, such as the dominions of a government, a country, or a province.

*Campagne* is said of a certain extent of fields, and is the opposite of *ville*, town, as :

France is a fine country.

*La France est un beau pays.*

I prefer the country to the town.

*Je préfère la campagne à la ville.*

*Contrée* is said of a certain extent of country, more or less great, considered under some physical relation, making a distinct whole of it, as :

A sandy country.

*Une contrée sablonneuse.*

He lived a long time in the icy regions of the north.

*Il a longtemps habité les contrées glaciales du nord.*

It is sometimes used in a more general sense, as :

To wander from country to country.

*Errer de contrée en contrée.*

*Patrie* is the native land, as :

In poor countries, the climate of which is ungenial, we see men cherish their native land.

*Dans des contrées pauvres, dont le climat est rude, on voit les hommes chérir leur patrie.*

APPLICATION.

No. 2.—COUNTRY.

QUESTIONS.

ANSWERS.

France is a fine country, is it not ?

It is ; when I was there I usually spent a part of the summer in the country.

Do you not prefer the country to the town ?

I do ; but I never have time to stay long in the country.

Can there be a greater crime than to bear arms against one's country ?

It is very difficult to justify the man who would thus seem to betray his country.

Did not those exiles live a long time in the icy regions of the north ?

They did ; and in those poor countries, the climate of which is ungenial, they noticed that the inhabitants cherished their native land.

No. 3.—MOUTH, *Bouche, Gueule.*

*Bouche* is the human mouth.

*Bouche* is also used in speaking of horses and of a few other animals, and of beasts of burden and draught, as :

*La bouche d'un cheval.*

*La bouche d'un âne.*

*La bouche d'un éléphant.*

*La bouche d'un singe.*  
*La bouche d'un mulet.*  
*La bouche d'un chameau.*  
*La bouche d'un bœuf, &c.*

For the greater part of other animals, and especially for those of the lower orders, *gueule* is used, as :

*La gueule d'un loup.*  
*La gueule d'un chien.*  
*La gueule d'un requin.*  
*La gueule d'une truite.*

SYN.—*Bouche s'emploie toutes les fois qu'il n'est pas question de marquer la voracité.*  
*Gueule s'applique plus particulièrement aux animaux qui ne vivent que de chair.*

What is the matter with you?	<i>Qu'avez-vous ?</i>
What is the matter with your hand?	<i>Qu'avez-vous à la main ?</i>
Your hand looks sore.	<i>Vous avez l'air d'avoir mal à la main.</i>
It is sore.	<i>J'y ai mal.</i>

## APPLICATION.

## No. 3.—MOUTH.

## QUESTIONS.

## ANSWERS.

What is the matter with your mouth? it looks sore. It is, is it not?	It is very sore; we all poisoned our mouths when we were in the country a fortnight ago.
Were not the dogs carrying the meat in their mouths?	No, the butcher had tied it on their backs.
That bit will hurt your horse's mouth, will it not?	It will; I do not intend to use it; his mouth is already sore. His last bit was a great deal too large; I had it altered too late.

No. 4.—TIME, *Temps, Fois, Mesure.*

The word *time*, denoting any period or space, is expressed by *temps*, as:

It is time to set out.	<i>Il est temps de partir.</i>
This time we shall not be there in time.	<i>Cette fois-ci nous n'y serons pas à temps.</i>

But the word *time* is sometimes used to limit the action of the verb, or to denote the repetition of the action, as; the first time, this time, another time, several times, &c., and it is then expressed by *fois*, f., as:

Pardon me for this time.	<i>Pardonnez-moi pour cette fois.</i>
I will do it better another time.	<i>Je le ferai mieux une autre fois.</i>
How many times did you write?	<i>Combien de fois avez-vous écrit ?</i>

*Time* in music is *mesure*, f., as:

Does he understand time?	<i>Sait-il la mesure?</i>
To be in tune.	<i>Etre d'accord.</i>
To be out of tune.	<i>Ne pas être d'accord.</i>
To sing in tune.	<i>Chanter juste.</i>
To sing out of tune.	<i>Chanter faux.</i>

# APPLICATION.

## No. 4.—TIME.

QUESTIONS.	ANSWERS.
Is it not time to set out?	It is not quite time to set out; however, let us go; this time we shall be in time.
Pardon me this time; I will do it better another time.	I have told you so many times not to do what you have just done, that it is impossible for me to forgive you.
How does your pupil play now? I am told he plays on several instruments.	He has a fine tone on the flute and clarinet, but I have never been able to make him understand time.
How does that young lady play the piano?	Very well; she also plays very well on the guitar, but she sings out of tune.
Is her piano in tune?	It is not; it has been out of tune these six months. The tuner will be here the day after to-morrow.

## No. 5.—YEAR, *An, Année.*

*An* is an indefinite expression which serves rather to denote the period than its duration; it is chiefly used after the cardinal numbers, *un, deux, &c.*, as: *un an, deux ans, trois ans, &c.*

*Année*, on the contrary, implies duration, and will admit of different modifications; so when *year* is attended by an article, an adjective, or another noun, it is generally expressed by *année*, as:

This year.	<i>Cette année-ci.</i>
A good year.	<i>Une bonne, une heureuse année.</i>
A great number of years.	<i>Un grand nombre d'années.</i>
A whole year.	<i>Toute une année.</i>
To wish a happy new-year to any one.	<i>Souhaiter la bonne année à quelqu'un.</i>
New-year's day.	<i>Le jour de l'an.</i>

# APPLICATION.

## No. 5.—YEAR.

QUESTIONS.	ANSWERS.
Were you not here two or three years ago?	I was here four years ago, and I recollect spending a very happy year.

Does not the word <i>année</i> require to be qualified by the events which have filled its duration?	It does; I will give you an example: "We have had a very rainy year." "Last month was a very rainy one." "Last year was a very rainy one."
Did you pay many visits on New-year's day? To how many persons did you wish a happy New-year?	I did not pay more than ten or eleven: next year I shall visit all my friends during the year.

### No. 6.—DAY, *Jour, Journée.*

*Les remarques sur An et Année, s'appliquent à Jour et à Journée. Le dictionnaire des Synonymes de la langue française dit que: "Le mot Jour marque une époque, détermine l'étendue d'une durée. La Journée est envisagée comme une durée déterminée et divisible en plusieurs parties, à laquelle on rapporte les événements qui peuvent s'y rencontrer. La Journée est l'espace de temps qui s'écoule depuis l'heure où l'on se lève, jusqu'à l'heure où l'on se couche." Ex.:*

*Quand le temps est serein et doux, il fait une belle journée.*

*Quand viendrez-vous passer la journée avec moi?*

*Journée* is also applied in speaking of a day signalized by some remarkable event, as: *La journée d'Austerlitz*. And speaking of a battle, we say: "*Ce fut une sanglante journée.*" "*On désespérait du succès de la journée.*"

Afternoon—*Après-dîner, m.*

*Après-dîné, m.*

*Après-midi, f.*

*Après-dinée, f.*

### APPLICATION.

#### No. 6.—DAY.

##### QUESTIONS.

##### ANSWERS.

How did you spend the day when you went into the country last week?	I did not remain there the whole day; I remained there, however, the whole morning.
It was fine weather this morning, was it not?	It <del>was</del> very fine. It was very fine all day.
I was sorry that I could not go out; I was obliged to remain at home all the morning; did you go out?	I did not; by the way, shall we see you this evening? I need not tell you who is to spend the evening with us, need I?

#### No. 7.—MORNING, *Matinée.* EVENING, *Soir, Soirée.*

It is the same with *matin, matinée; soir* and *soirée*, as it is with *jour, journée*. *Matin* is said of the first, and *soir* of the last part of the day; but they do not imply any idea of duration. *Matinée*, on the contrary, implies the whole time from daylight till noon; but it is generally understood to be from the time that people get up till twelve o'clock at noon.

*Soirée* implies the whole time of darkness till twelve o'clock at night, or till people retire.

## EXAMPLES.

It was fine this morning.	<i>Il faisait beau ce matin.</i>
I have studied all the morning.	<i>J'ai étudié toute la matinée.</i>
Shall we see you this evening?	<i>Vous verrons-nous ce soir?</i>
I shall spend the evening with you.	<i>Je passerai la soirée chez vous.</i>

N. In saluting, we say *bonjour* for good morning; *bonsoir* for good-night, in the early part of the night; and *bonne nuit*, when the night is far advanced.

Where did he sleep?	<i>Où a-t-il couché?</i>
Where did he lie down?	<i>Où s'est-il couché?</i>
To go to bed early.	<i>Se coucher de bonne heure.</i>
To be up late.	<i>Se coucher tard.</i>
By the watch.	<i>A la montre.</i>
Town-clock.	<i>Horloge, f.</i>
Parlor-clock.	<i>Pendule, f.</i>

## APPLICATION.

## No. 7.—MORNING. EVENING.

## QUESTIONS.

## ANSWERS.

Where did he sleep last night?	He spent the whole night at the ball.
Will you go to the play this evening?	Not this evening; I intend to go to bed early to-night; I was at the ball last night and up very late.
It is twelve o'clock, is it not?	It is a quarter-past twelve by my watch, how late is it by the clock?—By the clock it is a quarter-past one.
You intend to sit up to-night, do you not?	How can I? I was up too late last night, and the night before also.

No. 8.—NIGHT, *Nuit, Soir.*

If by *night* you mean the whole time of darkness on the part of the earth which we inhabit, you express it in French by *nuit*, as:

<i>Où a-t-il couché la nuit passée?</i>	<i>Il a passé toute la nuit au bal.</i>
---	---

If by *night* you mean only the first part of darkness, which is otherwise called evening, you express it by *soir*, as:

Will you go to the play to-night?	<i>Irez-vous au spectacle ce soir?</i>
Were you at the ball last night?	<i>Etiez-vous au bal hier soir?</i>

*Last night* is often expressed by *cette nuit*, as:

I did not sleep well last night.	<i>Je n'ai pas bien dormi cette nuit (qui vient de passer, understood).</i>
----------------------------------	---



## APPLICATION.

## No. 8.—NIGHT.

## QUESTIONS.

## ANSWERS.

At what o'clock did you go to bed last night?	I was up very late; it wanted a quarter to one when I went to bed.
I had spent the evening at your brother's; where did you spend yours?	I went to the theatre, and left about a quarter past twelve; I was not in bed before a quarter to two.
Were you not here last night?	I was not; were you?

No. 9.—To HAVE, EXPRESSED BY *Être*.

The auxiliary verb *have* is expressed by the same tense and person of *être*, when it comes before any of the following past participles:

Agreed.	<i>Convenu</i> .*	Deceased.	<i>décédé.</i>
Arrived.	<i>Arrivé.</i>	Disagreed.	<i>Disconvenu.</i>
Become.	<i>Devenu.</i>	Fallen.	<i>Tombe.</i>
Befallen.	<i>Survenu.</i>	Gone.	<i>Allé.</i>
Born.	<i>Né.</i>	Returned.	<i>Revenu.</i>
Come.	<i>Venu.</i>	Set out.	<i>Parti.</i>
Come in.	<i>Entré.</i>	Succeeded.	<i>Parvenu.</i>
Dead.	<i>Mort.</i>	Become again.	<i>Redevenu.</i>

## EXAMPLES.

I set out too early.	<i>Je suis parti de trop bonne heure.</i>
He agreed to do it.	<i>Il est convenu de le faire.</i>
We arrived in time.	<i>Nous sommes arrivés à temps.</i>
You returned too soon.	<i>Vous êtes revenus trop tôt.</i>
They went too far.	<i>Ils sont allés trop loin.</i>

*Demeuré*, used for *lived*, *dwelt*, requires *avoir*, and for *remained*, *stayed*, it requires *être*, as:

He has lived in Paris.	<i>Il a demeuré à Paris.</i>
He has stayed in Paris.	<i>Il est demeuré à Paris.</i>

The following participles take indifferently, *avoir* or *être*:

\* When *convenu* means suited, it requires *avoir*, as:

That would have suited you very well. *Cela vous aurait fort bien convenu.*

N. B. The participles *sorti*, gone out, been out—*passé*, gone by—*monté*, gone up—*descendu* come down—require *avoir* or *être*, according to the sense in which they are used. *Être* is used to express a *state*; *avoir*, to express an *action*, as:

<i>Avoir.</i>		<i>Être.</i>	
My father has been out.	<i>Mon père a sorti.</i>	He was gone out.	<i>Il était sorti.</i>
He has passed just by.	<i>Il a passé près d'ici.</i>	He is gone by.	<i>Il est passé.</i>
He has ascended the hill.	<i>Il a monté la colline.</i>	He is gone up.	<i>Il est monté.</i>
He has come down the stairs.	<i>Il a descendu l'escalier.</i>	He is come down.	<i>Il est descendu.</i>

<i>Accouru.</i>	Run to.	<i>Disparu.</i>	Disappeared.
<i>Péri.</i>	Perished.	<i>Crû.</i>	Grown.
<i>Apparu.</i>	Appeared.	<i>Décrû.</i>	Grown less.
<i>Comparu.</i>	Appeared.		

APPLICATION.

No. 9.—To HAVE, EXPRESSED BY *Etre*.

QUESTIONS.

ANSWERS.

Why did you not go away after hurting yourself?	I should have gone away if you had arrived in time, as you had agreed to do.
Would you not have set out earlier if they had not returned too soon?	They did not return too soon; I had hurt my leg when they came in. I would not have walked this morning for all the world.
Did you not say that the arrangement did not suit your partner?	I agree I said so; nobody else agreed to it.

No. 10.—To BE, EXPRESSED BY *Avoir*.

The verb *to be* is expressed by the same tense and person of *avoir*, when it is followed by the adjectives *hungry, thirsty, cold, warm, hot*, denoting the natural feelings; or by the adjectives *right, wrong, afraid, ashamed, &c.*, because nouns are used in the French construction, as:

I am hungry.	<i>J'ai faim.</i> (I have hunger.)
He is thirsty.	<i>Il a soif.</i>
His feet are cold.	<i>Il a froid aux pieds.</i>
She is warm.	<i>Elle a chaud.</i>
Her hands are warm.	<i>Elle a chaud aux mains.</i>
We are right.	<i>Nous avons raison.</i>
They are wrong.	<i>Ils ont tort.</i>
They are ashamed.	<i>Ils ont honte.</i>

} de bef. verb.

The verb *to be* is also expressed by *avoir*, in speaking of the age, because in these instances, as in the above, the French use a substantive instead of an adjective.

Ex. How old are you?	<i>Quel âge avez-vous?</i>
I am sixteen.	<i>J'ai seize ans.</i>
How old is your horse?	<i>Quel âge a votre cheval?</i>
He is over eight.	<i>Il a huit ans passés.</i>
He will be ten next April.	<i>Il aura dix ans au mois d'avril prochain.</i>

I may be wrong, &c.	<i>Il est possible que j'aie tort.</i>
To warm one's hands by the stove.	<i>Se chauffer les mains au poêle.</i>
To wash one's hands in warm water.	<i>Se laver les mains à l'eau chaude.</i>
Not over warm.	<i>Pas trop chaud.</i>
To get a thing.	<i>Se procurer une chose. Avoir une ch.</i>

## APPLICATION.

No. 10.—To BE, EXPRESSED BY *Avoir*.

## QUESTIONS.

## ANSWERS.

You say you are more hungry than thir-	I am very hungry, but my feet are so
ty; why do you not eat?	cold that I cannot eat before warming
	them.
You are wrong to say they were	I may be wrong to say so, but I am sure
ashamed to tell how old they were,	they are each more than eighty.
are you not?	
Warm your hands by the stove, or else	I don't think I can get any warm water;
wash them in warm water if you can	I shall have to warm them by the
get any.	stove—the stove is not over warm.

No. 11.—To BE, EXPRESSED BY *Avoir*. (See Remarks connected with No. 10.)

## APPLICATION.

No. 11.—To BE, EXPRESSED BY *Avoir*.

## QUESTIONS.

## ANSWERS.

Will you be twenty next month?	I was twenty-one last month.
How old is that young lady?	She is between fifteen and sixteen, some say she is only fourteen.
Is not your horse more than six?	He will be seven next spring.
Which is the older of those two young ladies?	The fair one is the older, she is fifteen—the dark one is only twelve.

No. 12.—To BE, EXPRESSED BY *Faire*.

The verb *Be*, attended by an adjective or a substantive denoting the state of the weather or the atmosphere, is expressed by *Faire*, in French, in the same tense, with *il* for its nominative, as:

How is the weather?	<i>Quel temps fait-il?</i>
Is the weather fine?	<i>Fait-il beau temps?</i>
Yes, the weather is very fine.	<i>Oui, il fait très-beau temps.</i>
It is rather warm.	<i>Il fait un peu chaud.</i>
It is very cold.	<i>Il fait très-froid.</i>
The weather has been bad lately.	<i>Il a fait mauvais temps depuis peu.</i>
It is not fine enough.	<i>Il ne fait pas assez beau.</i>
To be windy.	<i>Faire du vent.</i>
To be rainy.	<i>Faire de la pluie.</i>
To be snowing.	<i>Faire de la neige.</i>
To take a walk.	<i>Faire une promenade; or, un tour de promenade.</i>
To take a ride.	<i>Faire une promenade à cheval, en voiture, &amp;c.</i>

To take a sail.	<i>Faire une promenade en bateau.</i>
To be sunny.	<i>Faire du soleil.</i>
To be foggy.	<i>Faire du brouillard.</i>
To be dark.	<i>Faire obscur.</i>
To be light.	<i>Faire clair.</i>
To be fine	} weather. <i>Faire beau; or, beau temps.</i>
To be bad	
To be cold.	<i>Faire froid.</i>
To be warm.	<i>Faire chaud.</i>
To be very cold.	<i>Faire-très-froid; or, grand froid.</i>
To be muddy.	<i>Faire crotté; or, de la crotte; or, de la boue.</i>
To be slippery.	<i>Faire glissant.</i>
To thunder.	<i>Faire du tonnerre.</i>
To lighten.	<i>Faire des éclairs.</i>
To be windy.	<i>Faire du vent.</i>
To be gloomy.	<i>Faire sombre.</i>
To be dry.	<i>Faire sec.</i>
To be cool.	<i>Faire frais.</i>
To be wet.	<i>Faire humide.</i>
To be cloudy.	<i>Faire un temps couvert.</i>

APPLICATION.

No. 12.—TO BE, EXPRESSED BY *Faire*.

QUESTIONS.

ANSWERS.

How is the weather; is it fine enough to walk?	It is not fine enough to walk, but although rather warm, it is fine enough to ride.
Do you ride every day?	The weather has been so bad lately that I have neither walked nor ridden.
Do you take a sail when the weather is fine?	I never take a sail when the weather is fine and when I can ride. I took a long ride yesterday, and I intend to take a longer one to-day.
You say you know how to ride well; here, ride this horse. You may ride him all day if you please.	I do not wish to ride that one; he is too fiery, he is very skittish. I am afraid he will throw me.

No. 13.—TO BE, TO DO, *Se porter*.

The verbs *Be* and *Do*, used to denote the state of the body, are expressed by the same tense and person of the reflected verb *Se porter*, as:

How are you?	<i>Comment vous portez-vous?</i>
How do you do?	<i>Comment vous portez-vous?*</i>

\* The French do not, like the English, thank those who inquire after their health. Instead of "*Je vous remercie*," they say, "*à votre service*;" or, "*vous êtes bien bon*;" "*vous êtes bien honnête*;" "*vous avez bien de la bonté*;" or they return the compliment after the answer, by saying, "*et vous ?*"

I am pretty well, I thank you.

*Je me porte assez bien, et vous ?*

I have not been well.

*Je ne me suis pas bien porté.*

How does your mother do?

*Comment se porte madame votre mère ?\**

She is not exactly well.

*Elle ne se porte pas trop bien.*

#### APPLICATION.

##### No. 13.—To BE. To DO.

###### QUESTIONS.

###### ANSWERS.

How do you do this morning?

I am pretty well, I thank you.

You were not very well all last year, were you?

I was very well the whole year; my brother was not exactly well.

How is your mother? She is better now, is she not?

She is somewhat better; she is to be here in the course of the morning or the afternoon.

##### No. 14.—To BE TO, *Devoir*.

The present tense of the verb *to be to* (*I am to, thou art to, &c.*), and the imperfect (*I was to, &c.*), followed by another verb in the infinitive, are expressed by the same tense and person of the verb *devoir*, as:

I am to go home to-night.

*Je dois aller chez moi ce soir.*

He is to come to-morrow.

*Il doit venir demain.*

He was to bring it to-day.

*Il devait l'apporter aujourd'hui.*

#### TO BE, NOT EXPRESSED IN FRENCH.

The infinitive *to be*, followed by a past participle, is not expressed in French, in phrases of the following nature, viz.:

There is nothing to be seen.

*Il n'y a rien à voir.*

He ordered his head to be cut off.

*Il lui fit trancher la tête.*

This house is to be let.

*On doit louer cette maison.*

This stable is to be sold.

*On doit vendre cette écurie.*

#### APPLICATION.

##### No. 14.—To BE TO, (I AM TO, I WAS TO, &c.).

###### QUESTIONS.

###### ANSWERS.

Are not your friends to be here to-morrow, if they are all well?

There is nothing to be seen; I do not think they will come; they may, though.

\* It is customary with the French, in mentioning the relations of the persons to whom they are speaking, to add the words, *Monsieur, Madame, Mademoiselle, &c.*, as:

*Comment se porte Monsieur votre père ?*

*Comment se porte Madame votre mère ?*

*Comment se porte Mademoiselle votre sœur ?*

When persons are intimate, this usage is not observed.



Is this house to be let?	It is not; it is to be sold.
Do you think it will be sold in the course of this afternoon?	It will, if the purchasers, who were to be here an hour ago, arrive in time.

NO. 15.—TO BE JUST, TO HAVE JUST, *Venir de, Ne faire que de.*

The verbs *to have* and *to be*, followed by the adverb *just*, to denote an action that has taken place immediately before the time at which we are speaking, are expressed by *venir de*, or *ne faire que de*, in the same tense and person as *have* or *be*, the French verb after the preposition *de* being put in the infinitive.

I am just come. *Je viens d'arriver*; or, *Je ne fais que d'arriver.*

My brother had just done.  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{Mon frère venait de finir.} \\ \textit{Mon frère ne faisait que de finir.} \end{array} \right.$

N. B. Do not confound *ne faire que de* with *ne faire que*, which expresses another idea, viz: *To do nothing but.* *De* added to the first makes the difference between these two expressions.

APPLICATION.

NO. 15.—TO BE JUST. TO HAVE JUST.

QUESTIONS.

ANSWERS.

Were you not to receive letters in the course of the afternoon?	I have just received two; neither is for you.
Had your brother just done when you came in?	When I came in he had just begun: I was told he had just arrived.
Why do you wish to have that house sold?	I do not wish to have it sold; I have just had it repaired and painted.
That young lady has just been playing on the piano, has she not?	She has; she does nothing but play on it the whole day long.

NO. 16.—WAS NEAR—WERE NEAR—HAD LIKE TO—*Penser, Manquer.*

*Was near, were near*, followed by a present participle, and *had like*, followed by an infinitive, denote an action which was on the point of being effected, and are expressed by the preterite definite or the compound of the present of *penser* or *manquer*, according to the rule for the use of the past tense, as:

I was near dying.	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{J'ai pensé,} \\ \textit{J'ai manqué,} \end{array} \right\} \textit{mourir.}$
I had like to have died.	
You were near falling.	<i>Vous avez pensé tomber.</i>
You had like to have fallen.	<i>Vous pensâtes tomber.</i>
He was near being killed.	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{Il a pensé être tué.} \end{array} \right.$
He had like to have been killed.	
To run over.	<i>Passer sur le corps à, &amp;c.</i>
He was run over.	<i>La voiture lui a passé sur le corps.</i>
To be nearly concluded.	<i>Penser se conclure.</i>
To oppose a thing.	<i>S'opposer à une chose.</i>
To die with mortification.	<i>Mourir de chagrin.</i>

## APPLICATION.

## No. 16.—WAS NEAR; WERE NEAR; HAD LIKE TO.

## QUESTIONS.

## ANSWERS.

Was he not near drowning in crossing the river?	He was; when we saved him we had just saved his companion.
You had like to have fallen, had you not?	No, but I had like to have been run over by the carriage.
The marriage was near being concluded, was it not?	It was; the relatives opposed it in time; the lovers were near dying with mortification.

No. 17.—	{ THERE IS.	AGO.	IT IS FAR.	THIS.	{ <i>Il y a,</i> <i>Il y avait, &amp;c.</i>
	{ THERE ARE.	IT IS SINCE.	IT IS LONG.	THESE.	

The above expressions, pointing out a period of time, are rendered by the impersonal verb *Y avoir*, as:

Is there any news to-day?	<i>Y a-t-il des nouvelles aujourd'hui?</i>
Are there flowers in his garden?	<i>Y a-t-il des fleurs dans son jardin?</i>
How far is Calais from Paris?	<i>Combien y a-t-il de Calais à Paris?</i>
It is 150 miles.	<i>Il y a cent cinquante milles.</i>
Calais is 150 miles from Paris.	<i>Il y a 150 milles de Calais à Paris.</i>
How long has he lived here?	<i>Combien y a-t-il qu'il demeure ici?</i>
He has been here these 6 months.	<i>Il y a 6 mois qu'il est ici.</i>
It is 10 years since he was in France.	<i>Il y a dix ans qu'il était en France.</i>
He was in France 10 years ago.	<i>Il était en France il y a dix ans.</i>
It is long since I have seen him.	{ <i>Il y a longtemps que je ne l'ai vu.*</i>
I have not seen him this long while.	
I had not seen him for a twelvemonth.	<i>Il y avait un an que je ne l'avais vu.</i>

## APPLICATION.

No. 17.—	{ THERE IS.	IT IS FAR.	AGO.	THIS.
	{ THERE ARE.	IT IS LONG.	IT IS SINCE.	THESE.

## QUESTIONS.

## ANSWERS.

Some say he was in France ten years ago, and that before he went he had lived here nearly a year and a half; are they right to say so?	It is long since I have seen him; your brother, who was here an hour ago, knows him better than I do; he may be able to tell you.
--	---

\* *Il y a—que*—It is—since—requires *ne* before the following verb, when a negative turn may be given to the English phrase.

It is long since I have seen him; or. I have not seen him this long while.	{ <i>Il y a longtemps que je ne l'ai vu.</i>
---	--

Here is your horse; do you wish to ride him now?	If I wished it I could not; my saddle is out of order; there it is, go and get it mended.
There is a man who will mend it for you in the twinkling of an eye.	Why, you are right—that is the man I wanted.

No. 18.— { HERE IS.    HERE ARE.    THIS IS.    THESE ARE. } *Voici.*  
                   { THERE IS.    THERE ARE.    THAT IS.    THOSE ARE. } *Voilà.*

*Here is, here are, &c.*, pointing out any object, are expressed by *Voici*.

*There is, there are, &c.*, pointing out an object, are expressed by *Voilà*, as:

Here is, or this is your horse. *Voici votre cheval.*

Here are your boots. *Voici vos bottes.*

There is a man who wants you. *Voilà un homme qui a besoin de vous.*

N. B.—It is to be observed, that when the nominative of the verb which attends “*here*,” “*there*,” in the above sense, i. e., pointing out an object, is a personal pronoun, this nominative pronoun is changed into an objective pronoun in French, and placed before *Voici*, *Voilà*; thus:

Here I am. *Me voici.*

Here they are. *Les voici.*

Here he is. *Le voici.*

There she is. *La voilà.*

Here we are. *Nous voici.*

To let a person know a thing. *Faire savoir une chose à une personne.*

Nobody else. *Ne—personne autre.*

So! *Ah! Ah!*

Here! *Tenez!*

To get bound. *Faire relier.*

# APPLICATION.

No. 18.— { HERE IS.    HERE ARE.    THIS IS.    THESE ARE.  
                   { THERE IS.    THERE ARE.    THAT IS.    THOSE ARE.

## QUESTIONS.

## ANSWERS.

There is the man who was here a quarter of an hour ago; he says you must pay him a twelvemonth hence at farthest.	Let him say what he pleases; let all his friends say what they please; I will let them know when I am ready to pay them.
---	--

When did you let them know that the general had arrived?	I let them know it more than a week ago, but I do not intend to let anybody else know it before a fortnight.
--	--

Here I am; what do you want of me?	So, there you are at last; here, here are your boots; go and get them mended
------------------------------------	--

# No. 19.—To MAKE, *Faire, rendre*.

*To make*, meaning to perform some work, or some action, is expressed by *faire*; as:

To make a box. *Faire une boîte.*

To make a noise. *Faire du bruit.*

To make great progress. *Faire de grands progrès.*

But *to make*, expressing, not the performance of an action, but the moral or natural effects of one being on another, is expressed by *rendre*. (*To make*, followed by an adjective, is expressed by *rendre*.)

Exercise makes the body healthy	<i>L'exercice rend le corps sain.</i>
Vice makes men unhappy.	<i>Le vice rend les hommes malheureux.</i>
Misfortune has made him wise.	<i>Le malheur l'a rendu sage.</i>
To mistake another person's voice for mine.	<i>Prendre la voix d'un autre pour la mienne.</i>
To take exercise.	<i>Faire de l'exercice.</i>
How is it, &c.	<i>Comment se fait-il que, &amp;c.</i> (Following verb in the subjunctive.)

## APPLICATION.

## QUESTIONS.

## ANSWERS.

How many boxes did you make to-day?	I made but eleven.
Did you not just tell me that those children do nothing but play?	How could I have told you so? I have just come in; you must have mistaken another person's voice for mine.
Does not exercise make the body healthy?	It does; do you take much?
Since vice makes men so unhappy, how is it they do not shun it more?	It is singular they do not; experience does not seem to make them wiser.

No. 20.—To CAUSE—To HAVE—To GET—*Faire*.

The verbs *cause* and *have*, and *get*, in the sense of *cause*, meaning to order, or procure a thing to be done, are expressed by the same tense and person of *faire*, and the English participle which follows *have* or *get*, is expressed by the infinitive in French, as:

I had him arrested.	<i>Je l'ai fait arrêter.</i>
I shall have him punished.	<i>Je le ferai punir.</i>
Get your watch mended.	<i>Faites raccommoder votre montre.</i>

To cause to be done or made,	} <i>Faire faire—</i>
To have or to get done or made,	
To order or bespeak,	

are expressed by the verb *faire* repeated, *i. e.*, the first verb in the same tense and person as *cause*, *have*, *get*, *order*, or *bespeak*, and the second verb in the infinitive, as:

I am going to get a watch made.	<i>Je vais faire faire une montre.</i>
Where will you get it made?	<i>Où la ferez-vous faire?</i>
I shall have it made in Paris.	<i>Je la ferai faire Paris.</i>
To have a thing doné or made for one's self.	<i>Se faire faire une chose.</i>
To have a thing lent one.	<i>Se faire prêter une chose.</i>

• APPLICATION.

No. 20.—To CAUSE. To HAVE. To GET.

QUESTIONS.

ANSWERS.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <p>Do you know who had your servant arrested?</p> <p>Why do you not get your watch mended?</p> <p>2. Not yet: lend me the one you made the watch-maker return you when you had your own repaired.</p> <p>Your cartridges look dry; hand me one out of that bundle. My cartridge-box is empty.</p> | <p>The same man that had yours punished a fortnight ago.</p> <p>I am getting a new one made, and I have had an old one lent me that goes pretty well. Have you had yours repaired?</p> <p>3. You mean my Paris watch, do you not? I have had it sent back to Paris to have it mended there.</p> <p>They are not all dry, though they look so; I could not get them all dried.</p> |
|---|---|
- 

No. 21.—To LOOK, *Regarder, Paraître, Avoir la mine, Avoir l'air.*

*To look at*, meaning to consider, to view, is expressed by *regarder*, as:

Look at that horseman.	<i>Regardez ce cavalier.</i>
------------------------	------------------------------

*To look*, meaning to seem, to appear, is *paraître, avoir l'air, avoir la mine, avoir apparence*, as:

That man looks very proud.	<i>Cet homme a l'air bien fier.</i>
You look very well to-day.	<i>Vous avez bonne mine aujourd'hui.</i>
That bread looks well.	<i>Ce pain paraît bon.*</i>
How does the country look?	<i>Quelle apparence a la campagne?</i>
To look for a person or a thing.	<i>Chercher une personne, une chose.</i>
In (after a superlative).	<i>De.</i>
Miserable bungler.	<i>Misérable massacre.</i>

APPLICATION.

No. 21.—To LOOK.

QUESTIONS.

ANSWERS.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <p>Who asked you to get those lads' coats made?</p> | <p>Their father asked me; he desired me to tell you about it. I have been looking for you these two days: have you had any made for them?</p> |
|---|---|
- 

\* Or, *ce pain a bonne mine*. *Mine* is said of the look of persons, and likewise of things that are eatable, as bread, meat, fruits, &c., but it cannot be said of other things.



2. I have not. There is no way to get them made here: the best tailor in the town is but a miserable bungler.

Look at your brother. He looks well to-day, does he not?      He looks much better than he did the day before yesterday. He looks as well as ever.

### No. 22.—To LOOK, *Regarder, Paraître, Avoir la mine.*

(See Remarks, No. 21.)

To hand.	<i>Passer.</i>
Dull.	<i>Emoussé—ne coupe pas.</i>
Sharp.	<i>Affilé.</i>
To be out of work.	<i>N'avoir pas d'ouvrage.</i>
To taste good.	<i>Avoir bon goût.</i>
To taste of.	<i>Avoir goût de.</i>
A slice.	<i>Une tranche.</i>
Garlic.	<i>Ail, m.; pl. Aulx.</i>

#### APPLICATION.

### No. 22.—To LOOK.

QUESTIONS.	ANSWERS.
That bread looks better than this; cut me a slice.	Hand me your knife, it looks better than mine; mine is dull, though it looks sharp.
Do you know what is the matter with that man? he looks very sad, does he not?	He looks sad and discontented because he is out of work; can't you get him some?
That ham does not look fresh; is it?	It not only looks fresh but it tastes very good; will you have a slice? I assure you it does not taste of garlic.

### No. 23.—To SUPPOSE, *Supposer, Penser, S'imaginer.*

We say in French, as in English, "*Supposer une chose*," to suppose a thing, i. e., to take it as granted for the sake of argument, as: You suppose (take for granted) a thing which is not probable.

*Vous supposez une chose qui n'est pas probable.*

But the verb *suppose*, so often used in English in the sense of to think, to fancy, to imagine, cannot be expressed by the verb *supposer* in French; it must be expressed by *penser* or *s'imaginer*; as:

I suppose you know the news.      *Je m' imagine que vous savez les nouvelles.*  
 It is supposed there has been a battle.      *On pense qu'il y a eu une bataille.*

TO HOPE, *Espérer, Se flatter, Aimer à croire, Se plaire à croire.*

The verb *hope*, followed by a future tense, is expressed by *espérer*.

N. B.—*Hope*, being the expectation of something to come, can never be said, in French, of what is past or present; so when the verb *hope* is followed by the present or perfect tense of another verb, it cannot be expressed by *espérer*; it must be rendered by *se flatter, aimer à croire, se plaire à croire*, as:

I hope you are well.	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \textit{Je me flatte,} \\ \textit{Je me plais à croire,} \\ \textit{J'aime à croire,} \end{array} \right\} \textit{que vous vous portez bien.}$
I hope I have not kept you waiting.	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \textit{Je me plais à croire,} \\ \textit{J'aime à croire,} \end{array} \right\} \textit{que je ne vous ai pas fait attendre.}$ (Never <i>J'espère.</i> )

Yet there are instances when we may also use *espérer*, if we transpose it in parenthesis at the end of the sentence, thus:

You are well, I hope.	<i>Vous vous portez bien, j'espère.</i>
I have not kept you waiting, I hope.	<i>Je ne vous ai pas fait attendre, j'espère.</i>

APPLICATION.

No. 23.—TO SUPPOSE. TO HOPE.

QUESTIONS.

ANSWERS.

If you say he will have me arrested, you suppose a thing that is not very probable, do you not?	I do not say so, but I suppose you know the news; he has had all your relatives arrested; I do not know exactly why.
I hope your brother will be here soon; do you think he will be long coming?	I hope he is better now. If he is well he will soon be here. He never makes anybody wait when he can help it.

No. 24.—TO TAKE, *Mener, Porter.* TO BRING, *Amener, Apporter.*

*Mener, to take*, is said of beings that have the natural faculty of walking; *porter* is said of the same beings when they have lost, or are not able to use that faculty; and also of things, as:

Take my horse to the stable.	<i>Menez mon cheval à l'écurie.</i>
Take the saddle to the saddler's.	<i>Portez la selle chez le sellier.</i>

*Amener* and *apporter* are used in the same sense as *mener* and *porter*, but they simply imply a relation to the place in which we are, as:

Bring me my horse.	<i>Amenez-moi mon cheval.</i>
Bring me my whip.	<i>Apportez-moi mon fouet.</i>
To be in a hurry.	<i>Etre pressé.</i>

To leave word with a person to have a thing done.	<i>Faire dire à une personne par une autre de faire faire une chose.</i>
One of his men.	<i>Un de ses ouvriers.</i>
In the afternoon.	<i>L'après-midi.</i>
In the course of the afternoon.	<i>Dans l'après-dinée.</i>
<i>Porter.</i>	To take, to carry.
<i>Apporter.</i>	To bring.
<i>Reporter.</i>	To take back. To carry back.
<i>Rapporter.</i>	To bring back.
<i>Emporter.</i>	To take away. To carry away.
<i>S'emporter.</i>	To fly in a passion. To become greatly excited.
<i>Mener.</i>	To take. To lead.
<i>Amener.</i>	To bring. To lead to.
<i>Ramener.</i>	To bring back. To lead back.
<i>Emmener.</i>	To take away. To lead away.

## APPLICATION.

## No. 24.—TO TAKE. TO BRING.

QUESTIONS.	ANSWERS.
I have not kept you waiting, I hope, have I?	Not long; I suppose you are not in so great a hurry as I am.
Before you took the saddle to the saddler's, did you take the horse to the stable?	I did; the saddler was not in. I left word with one of his men to have the new whip brought home early in the afternoon.
When do you intend to take these books to the bookbinder's?	I intend to take them there this evening, if the missing volume is brought back to me in time.

No. 25.—To USE, *Se servir de, User de, En user, Employer, Traiter, Agir, Avoir coutume.*

To use, meaning to make use of a thing, is rendered by the reflected verb *se servir de*, as:

I am using my knife, my pen, &c. *Je me sers de mon couteau, de ma plume,*  
and not *J'use mon couteau*, because *user une chose* means to wear out a thing, not, to make use of a thing.

Yet, speaking of moral or intellectual objects, we render *use* by *user de*, as:

To use patience, violence, reprisals, &c. *User de patience, user de violence, user de représailles, &c.*

To use, speaking of the manner of acting toward a person, is expressed by *traiter*, *en user avec*, *agir avec*, as:

He uses me well.

*{ Il me traite bien.  
Il en use bien avec moi.  
Il agit bien avec moi.*

He has not used me well.

*Il ne m'a pas bien traité.*

*To use*, meaning to be accustomed to, is rendered by *avoir coutume de, être accoutumé à*, as :

You are used to it.	<i>Vous y êtes accoutumé.</i>
He was not used to do so.	<i>Il n'avait pas coutume d'agir ainsi.</i>
To make a pen.	<i>Tailler une plume.</i>
A fine-hand pen.	<i>Une plume en fin.</i>
Coarse-nibbed pen.	<i>Plume taillée en gros.</i>
Fine-nibbed pen.	<i>Plume taillée en fin.</i>

APPLICATION.

No. 25.—To USE.

QUESTIONS.	ANSWERS.
Do you always make use of the same penknife to make a pen ?	I sometimes use the one you used to use to make fine-hand pens.
You can't use that pen; it is quite worn out; make another.	I can use it a little longer; I prefer coarse-nibbed pens to fine-nibbed ones; I am used to them.
Do not use violence towards him; use him well and he will use you well.	He has never used me well, although I have always endeavored to use patience toward him.

No. 26.—To HELP, *Aider, Servir.*

*To help*, in the sense of to assist a person to do a thing, is expressed by *aider*, as :

Shall I help you to do it?	<i>Vous aiderai-je à le faire ?</i>
My brother will not help me.	<i>Mon frère ne veut pas m'aider.</i>

But *to help* is often used in the sense of to take, to offer, to present a thing to a person; *help* is then rendered by *servir*, not the person to the thing, but the thing to the person, as :

Shall I help you to a glass of wine?	<i>Vous servirai-je un verre de vin ?</i> (Literally, To you shall I serve out a glass of wine ?)
Help that gentleman to a glass of sugar and water.	<i>Servez à ce monsieur là-bas un verre d'eau sucrée.</i>

N. Construe, as follows, phrases of a similar nature :

Help that gentleman.	<i>Servez ce monsieur-là.</i>
Help the gentleman.	<i>Servez monsieur.*</i>
Help them.	<i>Servez-les.</i>
Help them to meat.	<i>Servez-leur de la viande.</i>

\* When the person is present and within hearing, the article is dropped.

## APPLICATION.

## No. 26.—To HELP. To USE.

## QUESTIONS.

## ANSWERS.

You were not used to do so; why do you do so now?	Were I well treated I should act otherwise; violence is used towards me. I find myself obliged to use reprisals.
Your brother will not help you to do that; shall I?	Do, if you can; for I cannot use my right hand since I hurt it.
Shall I help you to a glass of wine?	Help this gentleman first; I will help myself.
Have you helped the ladies to fruit?	I have not; they prefer helping themselves.

## No. 27.—To ATTEND.

## EXPLAINED IN THE FOLLOWING EXAMPLES.

To attend a meeting.	<i>Aller or assister à une assemblée.</i>
To attend to one's duty.	<i>Faire or remplir son devoir.</i>
To attend to what is said.	<i>Faire attention à ce que l'on dit.</i>
To attend to business.	<i>S'appliquer aux affaires.</i>
To attend a sick person.	<i>Garder or soigner un malade.</i>
To attend a patient (visit).	<i>Voir or visiter un malade.</i>
To attend (wait upon) a master.	<i>Servir un maître.</i>
To attend (be taught by) a master.	<i>Prendre leçon d'un maître.</i>
To attend (give lessons to) a pupil.	<i>Donner leçon à un élève.</i>
To carry on business.	<i>Faire des affaires.</i>
To be very profitable.	<i>Rendre beaucoup.</i>
A nurse.	<i>Un (une) garde-malade.</i>
It is a difficult thing.	<i>C'est une chose difficile.</i>
It is difficult to get, &c.	<i>Il est difficile de se procurer, &amp;c.</i>

## APPLICATION.

## No. 27.—To ATTEND.

## QUESTIONS.

## ANSWERS.

When do you intend to attend the meetings?	If I have time I shall attend the second.
Do these lads attend to their duty?	They do not; they do not even attend to what is said to them.
Do you not think they will enrich themselves if they continue to attend to business as they do now?	They will; the business they carry on is very profitable.



Do you know whether Doctor Sangsue has found a nurse to attend your brother? He has found one, but my brother wants two; it is difficult to get a second.

No. 28.—To WANT, *Avoir besoin de, Avoir envie de, Désirer, Souhaiter, Vouloir, Demander.*

*To want*, meaning to be in need of a thing, or under the necessity of doing a thing, is expressed by *avoir besoin de*; as:

I want money (am in need of).	<i>J'ai besoin d'argent.</i>
I do not want him (have no need of).	<i>Je n'ai pas besoin de lui.</i>
I want to go to town (must go).	<i>J'ai besoin d'aller à la ville.</i>

But *want* is often used to denote merely wish or desire; it is then expressed by *avoir envie de, désirer, souhaiter, or vouloir*; as:

I want to see him (I wish).	<i>Je désire (Je souhaite (de)) le voir.</i>
I want to speak to him.	<i>J'ai envie de lui parler. (I have a mind.)</i>
I want him to learn French.	<i>Je veux qu'il apprenne le français.</i>

*To want* a person or a thing, in the sense of wish, is expressed by *demande*; as:

Whom do you want?	<i>Qui demandez-vous?</i>
What do you want?	<i>Que demandez-vous?</i>
You are wanted.	<i>On vous demande.</i>
He wants you.	<i>Il vous demande.</i>
Moreover.	<i>De plus.</i>
Thoroughly.	<i>A fond.</i>
Not that I know of.	<i>Pas que je sache.</i>
To walk so many miles a-day.	<i>Faire tant de milles par jour.</i>
To be in trim.	<i>Etre en haleine.</i>

APPLICATION.

No. 28.—To WANT.

QUESTIONS.

ANSWERS.

Do these men want neither money nor clothes?	They want money, and moreover, they want you to give them some.
I want you to go to France a year or two hence, but before you go I want you to study the language thoroughly.	I have already studied it a little; I want, however, to study it more attentively.
You are wanted, are you not?	Not that I know of. I think you are, though.
Do you want to speak to them?	I did; I do not now.
How many miles can you walk a day?	When I was in trim, I could walk 40.

No. 29.—To MARRY, *Marier, Epouser, Se marier.*

To give a person in marriage, or to perform the ceremony, is expressed by *marier*; to take a person in marriage, is expressed by *épouser*; as:

My father has married his niece. (has given her in marriage).	} <i>Mon père a marié sa nièce.</i>
My father has married his niece. (has taken her for his wife).	} <i>Mon père a épousé sa nièce.</i>
That bishop has married my sister. (performed the ceremony).	} <i>Cet évêque a marié ma sœur.</i>
That bishop married my sister. (has taken her as his wife).	} <i>Cet évêque a épousé ma sœur.</i>

N. *Married*, in the sense of taking a wife, is expressed by *épousé* after the auxiliary *have*; and by *marié* after the auxiliary *be*; as:

I have married his sister.	<i>J'ai épousé sa sœur.</i>
I am married to his sister.	<i>Je suis marié a sa sœur.</i>

To marry, without any object added, is rendered by the reflected verb, *se marier*; as:

When do you marry?	<i>Quand vous mariez-vous?</i>
I shall never marry.	<i>Je ne me marierai jamais.</i>
Love-match.	<i>Mariage d'inclination, m.</i>
Dowry.	<i>Dot, f. (final t always sounded.)</i>
To traffic.	<i>Négocier.</i>
Money-match.	<i>Mariage de convenance, m.</i>
Often turn out well.	<i>Sont souvent heureux.</i>

## APPLICATION.

## No. 29.—To MARRY.

QUESTIONS.	ANSWERS.
Is not a father who marries his daughters against their will, guilty both toward them and toward society?	Such a father is guilty, yet love-matches are not always the happiest.
Who is that gentleman yonder; is he a married man?	No, he is an old bachelor; he will never marry.
What is the name of the clergyman who married your niece?	I cannot recollect his name; I am told she is to have no dowry.
Thales was wont to say concerning marriage, "Young man, consider whether it be not too soon to marry; old man, consider whether it be not too late."	
To marry a woman for her property is not marrying, it is trafficking, and still money-matches often turn out very well.	

No. 30.—TO RIDE.

To ride well.	<i>Monter bien à cheval, se tenir bien à ch.</i>
To ride in a carriage.	<i>Aller en voiture.</i>
To ride on horseback.	<i>Aller à cheval.</i>
To take a ride in a carriage.	<i>Faire un tour en voiture. Se promener en v.</i>
To take a ride on horseback.	<i>Faire un tour cheval. - Se promener à cheval.</i>

*To ride*, attended by any particular object, that is, an object specified by a determining word, such as an article, &c., is generally rendered by *prendre, monter, aller*, as:

I will ride your horse and you will ride in my carriage.	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{Je prendrai} \\ \textit{J'irai sur} \\ \textit{Je monterai} \end{array} \right\} \textit{votre cheval et vous irez dans ma voiture.}$
--	---

TO WALK, *Marcher, Se promener.*

If by *walk*, you mean the action of going from place to place, either for business or exercise, you must use *marcher*, as:

Walk a little faster.	<i>Marchez un peu plus vite.</i>
I cannot walk any more.	<i>Je ne puis plus marcher.</i>
I have walked too much to-day.	<i>J'ai trop marché aujourd'hui.</i>

If by *walk*, you mean that exercise which is taken for diversion, you must use the reflected verb *se promener*, as:

Let us walk a little.	<i>Promenons-nous un peu.</i>
I have not walked to-day.	<i>Je ne me suis pas promené d'aujourd'hui.</i>
To take a walk.	<i>Faire une promenade ; faire un tour.</i>
Let us go and take a walk.	<i>Allons faire un tour de promenade.</i>
Go and take a walk in the garden.	<i>Allez faire un tour dans le jardin.</i>

*Faire un tour* is generally understood of a short walk, and *faire un tour de promenade*, or *faire une promenade*, means to take a walk without any limitation as to time, but rather long than very short.

Spring wagon with leather curtains.	<i>Char à bancs à ressort et à rideaux de cuir.</i>
-------------------------------------	---

APPLICATION.

No. 30.—TO RIDE. TO WALK.

QUESTIONS.

In which coach do you intend to ride?

Walk a little faster; you do not keep up with me. (*suivre.*)

ANSWERS.

I intended to ride your horse, but since you say you intend to ride him yourself, I shall ride in the spring-wagon with leather curtains.

I cannot walk any more; I have walked too much to-day.

Would you not like to take a short walk in the garden?	I will take one with you; stay a little longer and I promise to come and see you every other day for a twelve-month.
Come and see me to-morrow if you are well enough.	I do not think I shall be well enough to walk so far.

### No. 31.—To RETURN, *Retourner, Revenir, Rendre.*

For *to go back*, use *retourner*, as:

I come from Paris and I shall return (go back) to-morrow.	<i>Je viens de Paris et j'y retournerai demain.</i>
---	---

For *return*, in the sense of come back, use *revenir*, as:

I am going to Paris and I shall return (come back) next week.	<i>Je vais à Paris et je reviendrai la semaine prochaine.</i>
---	---

*To return*, meaning to give back, to restore, to repay, is *rendre*.

Return me my key.	<i>Rendez-moi ma clef.</i>
Did I not return it to you?	<i>Ne vous l'ai-je pas rendue?</i>
To call a person up (to awake from sleep).	<i>Faire lever une personne; réveiller une p</i>
They must have been broken.	<i>On a dû les casser.</i>
To be back.	<i>Etre de retour.</i>

#### APPLICATION.

### No. 31.—To RETURN (COME BACK AND GO BACK).

QUESTIONS.	ANSWERS.
If you go to Paris this month, will you return next month?	I do not think I shall return before the last week in March.
If you return to London, do you think your goods will be returned to you?	If I could, I suppose they would; I cannot return, however, before my partner returns from Lyons.
They break every thing in this house; look at those plates and that bottle, they must have been broken less than an hour ago.	When I went back to the house to call upon you, to tell you to call the clerks up early, there was nothing broken; they must have been broken since.
How long have you been back?	I have been back these two hours.

### No. 32.—To CALL. To BREAK.

To call a person.	<i>Appeler une personne.</i>
To call on a person. }	<i>Passer chez une personne.</i>
To call at a person's. }	
When will you call on me?	<i>Quand passerez-vous chez moi?</i>
I shall call upon you to-morrow.	<i>Je passerai chez vous demain.</i>

To break, *rompre, casser.*

*Rompre* is said of things which require some effort to break them, such as wood, &c., as:

You have broken my stick.

*Vous avez rompu mon bâton.*

*Casser* is said of things that are frail, such as glass, earthen ware, &c., as:

She has broken the plates.

*Elle a cassé les assiettes.*

The glass and bottle are broken.

*Le verre et la bouteille sont cassés.*

N. In speaking of *bones* use *casser*.

Ex. He has broken his leg.

*Il s'est cassé la jambe.*

Without specifying any particular object we use *casser*, as:

They break every thing in this house.

*On casse tout dans cette maison.*

To break, to dash to pieces, is *briser*.

The ship was dashed to pieces.

*Le navire fut brisé.*

To call a person up early.

{ *Faire lever quelqu'un matin.*  
*Réveiller de bonne heure. Réveiller matin.*

To be up late.

*Se coucher tard.*

To be up in time.

*Etre levé à temps.*

To oversleep one's self.

*Dormir trop tard.*

To make a person angry.

*Fâcher quelqu'un.*

To get angry.

*Se fâcher.*

To break one's cane over a person's head.

*Donner une volée de coups de canne à quelqu'un.*

# APPLICATION.

## NO. 32.—TO CALL. TO BREAK.

### QUESTIONS.

### ANSWERS.

If you still intend to call upon your friends in the morning, call me up early: I was up very late and I may not be up in time.

I will, if I do not oversleep myself. I called upon them the day before yesterday; they were not sure about returning home.

If you make him angry he will break his cane over your head. Do not speak to him when he is busy, you know it puts him in a passion.

I only want to tell him that the mainspring of my watch is broken; how can that put him in a passion?

## NO. 33.—TO LIKE, *Aimer, Trouver bon, Penser.*

To *like*, meaning to be fond of, to have a liking for a person, for a thing, is *aimer*; as:

I like wine, money, pleasure, &c.

*J'aime le vin, l'argent, le plaisir, &c.*

But *like* is often used, especially in asking questions, for to think, to have an opinion, and is then expressed by *penser* or *trouver*; as:

How do you like this country?

{ *Que pensez-vous de ce pays-ci?*  
*Comment trouvez-vous ce pays-ci?*



Yet in the answer we use *aimer*; as:

I like it well enough.	<i>Je l'aime assez.</i>
I like it much.	<i>Je l'aime beaucoup.</i>
I do not like it at all.	<i>Je ne l'aime pas du tout.</i>
The size.	<i>La grandeur.</i>
As large again.	<i>Une fois plus grand.</i>
To keep a horse.	<i>Avoir un cheval.</i>
What do you charge for, &c.	<i>Quel est le prix de, &amp;c.</i>
Seat in the coupé.	<i>Place (f.) au coupé.</i>
The first stage.	<i>La première voiture or diligence.</i>
What weight of baggage can you take?	<i>Combien de bagage pouvez-vous charger?</i>
To charge so much a seat.	<i>Prendre tant par place.</i>
We can take 100 kilogrammes.	<i>Nous pouvons charger cent kilogrammes.</i>

## APPLICATION.

## No. 33.—TO LIKE.

QUESTIONS.	ANSWERS.
How do you like this project? do you think we shall succeed in it?	I like it well enough, but whether I like it or not, it can never succeed.
Do you like the size of that picture?	I like large pictures: that one should be as large again.
How many horses do you keep?	I keep but one; it costs too much to keep two.
What is the charge for two seats in the coupé? we want to go by the first stage; please to tell me also what weight of baggage you can take.	We charge 50 francs a seat; we can take one hundred kilogrammes.

No. 34.—TO KEEP, *Garder, Tenir, Avoir.*

*To keep*, meaning to preserve, to watch, to guard, to look after, is expressed by *garder*; as:

Keep it for my sake.	<i>Gardez-le pour l'amour de moi.</i>
This dog keeps (watches) the house.	<i>Ce chien garde la maison.</i>
This boy keeps the flocks.	<i>Ce garçon garde les troupeaux.</i>

These instances excepted, *to keep* is generally *tenir*; as:

She keeps a school.	<i>Elle tient école.</i>
She keeps an inn.	<i>Elle tient auberge.</i>
She keeps boarders.	<i>Elle tient des pensionnaires.</i>
To keep a person in prison, in the house.	<i>Tenir une personne en prison, dans la maison.</i>

To keep clean.	<i>Tenir propre.</i>
To keep ready.	<i>Tenir prêt.</i>
To keep horses, cows, a carriage, &c.	<i>Avoir des chevaux, des vaches, une voiture, &amp;c.</i>

*To get, to gain, to earn, to win, to acquire*, are rendered by *gagner* ; as :

He gets (earns) 5 shillings a day.	<i>Il gagne cinq schellings par jour.</i>
He has got (won, earned) a deal of money.	<i>Il a gagné beaucoup d'argent.</i>

But the past participle *got*, so often added to the verb *have*, is not expressed in French, as :

Have you <i>got</i> any money about you ?	<i>Avez-vous de l'argent sur vous ?</i>
You have <i>got</i> a new hat.	<i>Vous avez un chapeau neuf.</i>
To keep one's room.	<i>Garder la chambre.</i>
To pain.	<i>Faire du mal.</i>
Ankle.	<i>Chevile (f.)</i>

#### APPLICATION.

#### No. 34.—To KEEP. To GET.

QUESTIONS.	ANSWERS.
How long has that lady kept a school ?	She does not keep a school now ; keeps a boarding-house ; she has yet but very few boarders.
Why do you keep in the house all day ; would you not like to take a short walk now and then ?	I am obliged to keep my room ; my ankle still pains me very much.
Are the beds kept clean at that hotel ?	Not always ; I have been obliged to have the sheets changed.
How much do these workmen earn a day ?	More than they deserve ; they fret and fume when they do not earn five dollars each.
When your brother was a clerk in the custom-house, how much did he get a year ?	I don't know what he got then ; he hardly gets five hundred dollars a year now, and he is busy from morning to night.

#### No. 35.—To SPEND, *Dépenser, Passer.*

Speaking of money, property, *to spend* is rendered by *dépenser* ; speaking of time, *to spend* is expressed by *passer* ; as :

He spends all his money in gambling.	<i>Il dépense tout son argent au jeu.</i>
He spends all his time in hunting.	<i>Il passe tout son temps à la chasse.</i>

TO CHARGE, *Prendre, Faire payer, Prix.*

The verb *charge*, so often used in speaking of the price of things, cannot be expressed in French by *charger*, which means, to load; it must be expressed by *prendre, faire payer*, or by *prix*, with a verb; as:

How much do you charge a day for a horse? *Combien prenez-vous par jour pour un cheval?*

How much do you charge for a saddle? *{ Combien prenez-vous pour une selle?  
Quel est le prix d'une selle?*

You charge too much. *{ C'est trop; c'est trop cher; vous prenez  
trop; vous faites payer trop cher.*

(Never (*vous chargez trop*) you load too much.)

In fencing.

*A faire des armes.*

To practise music.

*Faire de la musique.*

To play chess.

*Jouer aux échecs* (pr. *éché*.) in the plural.

To hire by the hour.

*Louer à l'heure.*

Next door.

*A côté.*

A wagon.

*Un char à bancs* (pleasure wagon).

## APPLICATION.

## No. 35.—TO SPEND.

## QUESTIONS.

## ANSWERS.

Do you spend your mornings in fencing or practising music?

I generally spend them in hunting; when the weather is rainy, I play chess.

How much do you charge a day for a horse and wagon?

We generally hire by the hour; you can get a horse and wagon next door. I think you will be charged two dollars and a half.

Have you good saddles? what do you charge for them? If you do not charge too much, I will take one.

I charge less than anybody else.

No. 36.—TO GO OUT TO MEET, *{ Aller au devant de.  
Aller à la rencontre de.*

Let us go and meet your friends.

*Allons au devant de vos amis.*

We were going out to meet you.

*Nous allions à votre rencontre;  
or, nous allions au devant de vous.*



To be with.

*En être de.**Il is with*, denoting a similarity between two objects, is, *Il en est de.*

## EXAMPLES.

It is with you as with me.

*Il en est de vous comme de moi.*

It is with a state as with a family.

*Il en est d'un état comme d'une famille.*

To get a thing ready.

*Apprêter une chose.*

Head of the bed.

*Le chevet du lit.*

Rather damp.

*Un peu humide.*

Class-mate.

*Camarade de collège. Condisciple.*

## APPLICATION.

## No. 37.—TO HEAR FROM. TO BE WITH. (IT IS WITH, &amp;c.)

## QUESTIONS.

## ANSWERS.

I hear your sister coming; get her books ready and draw her arm-chair near the head of the bed.

I do not think she wishes to sit up; if she does, I had better draw her chair nearer the fire: the weather is rather damp to-day.

Do you hear from your class-mates every day?

We hear from them every other day, and we shall do so, I hope, for six months.

Is it not with painters as with poets?

It is; both may have recourse to fiction.

Do you say you wish it were with you as it is with me?

I do; if it were with me as it is with you, it would not be with that affair as it is.

No. 38.—TO BE IN VAIN, *Avoir beau.*

*Avoir beau*, followed by a verb in the infinitive, is an idiom, meaning, to take useless trouble in doing a thing, as:

It is in vain for me to write.

*J'ai beau écrire.*

It is in vain for thee, &c.

*Tu as beau, &c.*

It is in vain for him, for her, for one, for people, &c.

*Il, elle, on a beau, &c.*

It is in vain for the man, &c.

*L'homme a beau, &c.*

It is in vain for us, &c.

*Nous avons beau, &c.*

It is in vain for you, &c.

*Vous avez beau, &c.*

It is in vain for them, &c.

*Ils, elles ont beau, &c.*

It is in vain that I tell him to study, he does not do it.

*J'ai beau lui dire d'étudier, il n'en fait rien.*

It is all in vain (for you).

*Vous avez beau faire.*

In vain philosophers prate and dream, their systems make everybody laugh.

*Les savants ont beau dire et beau rêver; leurs systèmes font rire.*



The wrong lesson.	<i>Une leçon pour l'autre. La mauvaise leçon.</i>
To master.	<i>Maîtriser.</i>
To retain.	<i>Retenir.</i>

APPLICATION.

No. 38.—TO BE IN VAIN.

QUESTIONS.

ANSWERS.

Did you tell those young gentlemen to study, and especially not to study the wrong lesson?	It is in vain that I tell them to study; they do not do it.
It is all in vain, you will never succeed in learning to speak a language unless you master the construction and learn the words.	I can master the construction, but it is in vain for me to study words; I cannot retain them long.

No. 39.—TO FIND FAULT WITH, *Trouver à redire à*; Lit. (*To find to gainsay.*)

He finds fault with every thing.	<i>Il trouve à redire à tout.</i>
What fault can be found with it?	<i>Que peut-on y trouver à redire?</i>

*Trouver à redire dans.  
Trouver à redire en.  
Trouver à redire que.*

Exemplified in the following:

EXAMPLES.

No fault is found with his work.	<i>On ne trouve rien à redire dans son ouvrage.</i>
Men find faults in others, which others find in them.	<i>Chacun trouve à redire en un autre ce qu'on trouve à redire en lui.</i>
Fault is found with your going out	<i>On trouve à redire que vous sortiez.</i>
To take it kindly of one.	<i>Savoir bon gré à quelqu'un de, &amp;c.</i>
To take it unkindly of one.	<i>Savoir mauvais gré à quelqu'un de, &amp;c.</i>

EXAMPLES.

If he come I will take it kindly.	<i>S'il vient je lui en saurai bon gré.</i>
He would take it unkindly of me.	<i>Il m'en saurait mauvais gré.</i>
Take it kindly or unkindly, it is all one to me.	<i>Sachez-m'en bon ou mauvais gré, cela m'est égal (or peu m'importe).</i>
To take a thing kindly of any one.	<i>Savoir bon gré (or beaucoup de gré) à quelqu'un d'une chose.</i>
To do without	<i>Se passer de.</i>

## APPLICATION.

## No. 39.—TO FIND FAULT WITH. TO TAKE IT KINDLY, UNKINDLY.

## QUESTIONS.

## ANSWERS.

Why do you find fault with every thing I do and say? Nobody else does.	Nobody ever found fault with what you say, but everybody finds fault with what you do, and always will.
What fault can be found with what those young ladies say or do?	No fault can be found; I even take it kindly of them to do what they do.
If you continue to find fault with what is done here, do you think it will be taken kindly?	Whether it be taken kindly or not, I cannot help finding fault; I can do without the good opinion of certain persons.

No. 40.—TO DO WITHOUT, *Se passer de*. TO BE IN QUESTION, *S'agir*.

What is the matter?	<i>Qu'y a-t-il, &amp;c.</i>
Can you do without a horse?	<i>Pouvez-vous vous passer d'un cheval?</i>
I cannot do without one.	<i>Je ne saurais m'en passer.</i>
When will you be able to do without your books?	<i>Quand pourrez-vous vous passer de vos livres?</i>
The money in question.	<i>L'argent dont il s'agit.</i>
What is the matter in question?	<i>De quoi s'agit-il?</i>
I can't help, &c.	<i>Je ne puis m'empêcher de, &amp;c., and que &amp;c., with verb in the subjunctive, thus:</i>
I cannot help finding fault with your not having warned me.	<i>Je ne puis pas m'empêcher de trouver à redire que vous ne m'ayez pas averti.</i>
What is the matter?	<i>{ Qu'y a-t-il? Qu'est-ce qu'il y a? Qu'est-ce que c'est?</i>
What is the matter there?	<i>{ Qu'y a-t-il là? Qu'est-ce qu'il y a là?</i>
What is the matter with you?	<i>Qu'avez-vous?</i>
What is the matter with your hand?	<i>{ Qu'avez-vous à la main? Qu'est-ce que vous avez à la main?</i>

N. *Qu'est-ce que* is very prevalent in conversation, instead of *que*; so instead of saying, *Que dites-vous?* What do you say? *Que faites-vous?* What are you doing? &c., you hear,

*Qu'est-ce que vous dites?*

What do you say?

*Qu'est-ce que vous faites?*

What are you doing?

(Instead of *qu'avaient-ils?*)

*Qu'est-ce qu'ils avaient à la figure?*

What was the matter with their faces?

APPLICATION.

No. 40.—To DO WITHOUT. To BE IN QUESTION. WHAT IS THE  
MATTER, &c.

QUESTIONS.

ANSWERS.

Do you think I can do without the money  
I have been promised?

You can no more do without money than  
without a passport and good letters of  
recommendation.

Do not take it unkindly of me if I say  
you may be obliged to do without the  
money in question.

I cannot help finding fault with your *not*  
warning me in time; how can I do  
without it? could you? You know  
you could not.

What is the matter with your hand?  
Have you hurt it?

I have hurt one of my fingers a little,  
near the nail; but what is the matter  
with you? you look very pale.



DEUXIÈME

COURS D'IDIOTISMES

À L'USAGE

DES ÉLÈVES DE L'ÉCOLE MILITAIRE DES ÉTATS-UNIS.

AVEC ÉLÉMENTS ET APPLICATION PRATIQUE.

PAR

*Yacynth*  
H. R. AGNEL.

PROF. DE LANGUE FRANÇAISE

---

A. S. BARNES & COMPANY,  
NEW YORK AND CHICAGO.

1874.



U.S. DEPT. OF AGRICULTURE

GOVERNMENT PRINTING OFFICE

1871

U.S. DEPT. OF AGRICULTURE

Entered according to Act of Congress, in the year 1871,  
by Mrs. EMILY AXEL, in the Office of the  
Librarian of Congress, at Washington.

U.S. DEPT. OF AGRICULTURE

1871

U.S. DEPT. OF AGRICULTURE

U.S. DEPT. OF AGRICULTURE

U.S. DEPT. OF AGRICULTURE

U.S. DEPT. OF AGRICULTURE

1871

# Deuxième Cours d'Idiotismes.

## ELEMENTS.

### LIST No. 1.

To be quite exhausted.  
 Not to be able to help it.  
 To lay the blame upon a person for, &c.  
 To take a thing for truth, for gospel.  
 To go into mourning.  
 In the main, all in all, take it all together.  
 To get the start, a start.  
 To run away. (A horse.)  
 To affect the nose (smell).  
 To burn one's throat (pepper).  
 The river will freeze over.  
 To allow one's self to be allured by promises.  
 To put on a smile.  
 To conceive friendship for a person.  
 A fire broke out in the house.  
 I was fortunate to, &c.  
 How to set about it.  
 To go the right way to work.  
 To go the wrong way to work  
 To proceed properly.  
 To bungle.

### LIST No. 2.

To be back again presently.  
 To go on slowly and surely.  
 Let the worst come to the worst.  
 Oh! Is that the way you proceed, you act, you do?  
 How he goes to work!  
 To be at stake.  
 His (her) fortune is at stake.  
 He likes to have his own way.

To set about working. To go to work.  
 It will go hard with him.  
 It is getting late, I must be going.  
 It goes by steam.  
 How goes it with you? }  
 How are you? }  
 He is too far gone.  
 As the story goes.

### Prendre.

*N'en pouvoir plus.*  
*Ne pouvoir qu'y faire.*  
*S'en prendre à une personne de, &c.*  
*Prendre une chose pour argent comptant.*  
*Prendre le deuil.*  
*A tout prendre.*  
*Prendre les devants.*  
*Prendre le mors aux dents.*  
*Prendre au nez.*  
*Prendre à la gorge.*  
*La rivière prendra.*  
*Se laisser prendre à une promesse.*  
*Prendre un air riant.*  
*Prendre une personne en amitié.*  
*Le feu pris à la maison.*  
*Bien m'en a pris de, &c.*  
*Comment s'y prendre.*  
*S'y prendre bien.*  
*S'y prendre mal.*  
*S'y prendre de la bonne manière.*  
*S'y prendre de travers.*

### Aller.

*Ne faire qu'aller et venir.*  
*Aller son petit bon homme de chemin. (Familiar.)*  
*Au pis aller.*  
*Quoi est-ce ainsi que vous y allez?*  
*Comme il y va!*  
*Y aller. (Used impersonally.)*  
*Il y va de sa fortune.*  
*Il aime à aller comme bon lui semble; à faire à sa guise.*  
*Se mettre à l'ouvrage.*  
*Il aura bien de la peine à s'en tirer.*  
*Il se fait tard, il faut que je m'en aille.*  
*C'est la vapeur qui le fait aller, marcher.*  
*Comment cela va-t-il?*  
*Comment ça va-t-il?*  
*Il est trop bas.*  
*Comme on raconte l'histoire.*

## LIST No. 2. Continued.

As the world goes.  
 To let go one's hold.  
 Going! Going! Going! Gone!  
 Let him go about his business  
 Go about your business.  
 To go down. (Sun.)  
 To go down. (Wind.)  
 To go down. (River.)  
 To go off. (Goods.)  
 To go off. (Guns.)  
 To go off. (To die.)  
 To let the fire go out.  
 To go over to France.  
 To go over to the enemy.  
 The joke goes round.  
  
 Pass the bottle round. Let the bottle go round.  
 I would go through fire and water for him.  
 Go to him, he is in his room.  
 To get along.  
 You can get along with that.

## LIST No. 3.

To set in order.  
 To set things right.  
 To set words to music.  
 To set to the tune of.  
 To set one's heart upon a thing.  
 To set a hen.  
 To set a man at variance with another.

To set them at loggerheads.  
 To set agog—agoing.  
 To set the teeth on edge.  
 To set an edge to a razor  
 To set a leg, a bone.  
 To set too great a value on, &c.  
 To set sail.  
 To put the cart before the horse.

To set a picture in its light.  
 Set me right if I am wrong.  
 Let me set you right.  
 They have a set price for everything.  
 To set aside all considerations.  
 The question is forever set at rest.  
 To set the world at defiance.  
 To set down passengers.

## Aller. Continued.

*A la manière dont vont les choses.*  
*Lâcher prise.*  
*Une fois! deux fois! trois fois! adjugé!*  
*Qu'il aille se promener*  
*Allez vous promener.*  
*Se coucher.*  
*Tomber.*  
*Baisser.*  
*Se-vendre.*  
*Partir.*  
*Mourir.*  
*Laisser éteindre le feu.*  
*Passer en France.*  
*Passer du côté de l'ennemi.*  
*La plaisanterie passe de bouche en bouche; elle*  
*circule.*  
*Faites circuler la bouteille.*  
*Je me jetterais au feu pour lui.*  
*Allez le trouver, il est dans sa chambre.*  
*Pouvoir aller.*  
*Vous pouvez aller avec cela.*

## To Set.

*Mettre en ordre.*  
*Mettre les choses à leur place.*  
*Mettre des paroles en musique.*  
*Mettre sur l'air de.*  
*Tenir beaucoup à avoir une chose.*  
*Mettre une poule à couver.*  
*Mettre un homme mal avec un autre, le brouiller*  
*avec lui.*  
*Les mettre aux prises.*  
*Mettre en train.*  
*Agacer les dents.*  
*Donner le fil à un rasoir.*  
*Remettre une jambe, un os.*  
*Mettre, attacher trop de prix à, &c.*  
*Mettre à la voile.*  
*Mettre la charrue devant les bœufs; mettre les*  
*choses à rebours.*  
*Mettre un tableau dans son jour.*  
*Corrigez-moi si j'ai tort.*  
*Permettez-moi de vous tirer d'erreur.*  
*Ils vendent tout à prix fixe, à prix fait.*  
*Mettre de côté, passer par-dessus toute considération.*  
*On ne reviendra plus sur la, sur cette question.*  
*Se moquer du qu'en dira-t-on.*  
*Déposer, descendre des voyageurs.*

LIST No. 3. *Continued.*

To land passengers.  
 To set down as a principle.  
 To set down in writing.  
 The weather has set in for rain.  
 To set up an establishment.

## LIST No. 4.

To shoot, to fire with ball.  
 To shoot with shot.  
 To shoot at a bird.  
 To practise shooting.  
 He shot him through the arm.  
 He was shot in the leg.  
 He was shot for having struck an officer.  
 He shot by like lightning.  
 He is a dead shot.  
 There is the place where the shot hit.  
 To draw a long bow.  
 To tell fibs.  
 To be rather shaky (person).

Cannon shot.  
 Canister.  
 Small shot.  
 Buck shot.

## LIST No. 5.

Why do you keep such people about you?  
 He is very uneasy about his brother.

About him.  
 I would send those people about their business if  
 I were in your place.  
 He sets about it like one who understands it.  
 He has his wits about him.  
 Do not be uneasy, I will bring it about.  
 Why all this ado about nothing?  
 I made no more ado, but went on with my work.

Without any more ado.  
 However annoying those things may be, do not  
 notice them.  
 Does this noise annoy you?

The least thing annoys him.  
 You look annoyed.

To Set. *Continued.*

*Débarquer des passagers*  
*Poser en principe.*  
*Coucher, mettre par écrit.*  
*Le temps s'est mis à la pluie.*  
*Monter une maison.*

## To Shoot.

*Tirer à balle.*  
*Tirer à plomb.*  
*Tirer sur un oiseau.*  
*S'exercer au tir, à tirer.*  
*Sa balle lui traversa le bras.*  
*Il reçut un coup de feu à la jambe.*  
*On l'a fusillé pour avoir frappé un officier.*  
*Il a passé avec la rapidité d'un éclair.*  
*Il ne manque jamais son coup.*  
*Voilà l'endroit où le boulet, la balle, a porté.*  
*En conter de belles.*  
*En dire de belles.*  
*Brauler au manche; être sujet à caution; ne pas*  
*falloir trop se fier à une personne.*  
*Boulet. m.*  
*Mitraille. f.*  
*Plomb. m.*  
*Chevrotine. f.*

## About, &amp;c.

*Pourquoi vous entourez-vous de pareilles gens?*  
*Il est très inquiet au sujet, sur le compte, de son*  
*frère.*  
*A son sujet, sur son compte.*  
*J'enverrais tous ces gens-là paître si j'étais à*  
*votre place, si j'étais de vous.*  
*Il s'y prend en homme qui s'y entend.*  
*Il ne perd pas la carte.*  
*Ne vous inquiétez pas, j'en viendrai à bout.*  
*Pourquoi tout ce bruit, ce tracas, à propos de rien?*  
*Je n'en fis ni une ni deux, mais je continuai mon*  
*travail.*  
*Sans plus de façons.*  
*Quelque contrariantes que soient ces choses, n'y*  
*prenez pas garde.*  
*Ce bruit vous dérange-t-il, vous incommode-t-il,*  
*vous gêne-t-il?*  
*La moindre chose le chagrine.*  
*Vous avez l'air contrarié.*



LIST No. 5. *Continued.*

How annoying it is to miss the train !

Boats are not allowed to come alongside.

She was at anchor along side of us,

Come along with me.

To glide along.

Come along !

Get along with you !

Take a glass of wine if you feel like it.

I do not feel like it.

Did you ever see anything like it ?

To give like for like.

Those reports had like to have been my ruin.

That is just like him.

Let us act like men.

He was like a father to me.

Give me a lift.

A man offered to give me a lift in his wagon : it was a good lift. I treated the man at the first inn.

To lie in the open air.

To lie at the point of death.

To lie sick of a fever.

He lies in bed all day.

To see how the land lies.

All his things lie about his room.

These goods will lie long on your hands.

Have you any time lying on your hands ?

Let it lie over until to-morrow.

It does not lie with me that he does not succeed.

It lies with you to decide if, &c.

## LIST No. 6.

To take in, to deceive.

To look full in the face.

You are full an hour behind your time.

Full dressed. Of a lady.

Full dressed. Of a military man.

Full dressed. Of professions.

Full dressed. Of gentlemen.

Undress. Of military men

Every-day dress.

To make a fuss.

He is fussy.

*About, &c. Continued.*

*Que c'est contrariant de manquer le convoi ! Quel contre temps de manquer le convoi !*

*On ne permet pas aux bateaux d'accoster.*

*Elle était mouillée à côté de nous.*

*Venez avec moi.*

*Glisser, couler.*

*Allons !*

*Allez-vous-en ! Va-t-en !*

*Prenez un verre de vin si le cœur vous en dit.*

*Le cœur ne m'en dit pas.*

*Avez-vous jamais vu rien de semblable ?*

*Rendre la pareille.*

*Peu s'en fallut que ces bruits ne me perdissent.*

*Je le reconnais bien là. Le voilà bien.*

*Agissons en hommes.*

*Il m'a servi de père.*

*Donnez-moi un coup de main.*

*Un homme encharrette offrit de m'épargner une partie du chemin, cela m'a bien aidé. J'ai payé à boire à l'homme à la première auberge.*

*Se coucher à la belle étoile.*

*Etre à l'article de la mort.*

*Etre au lit malade de la fièvre.*

*Il reste au lit toute la journée. Il dort la grasse matinée.*

*Reconnaître le pays ; s'orienter.*

*Toutes ses affaires traînent partout dans sa chambre.*

*Ces marchandises vous resteront longtemps sur les mains.*

*Avez-vous du temps de reste, du temps dont vous ne sachiez que faire ?*

*Différons la chose jusqu'à demain.*

*Il ne tient pas à moi qu'il ne réussisse.*

*C'est à vous à décider si, &c.*

*Full, &c.*

*Mettre dedans.*

*Regarder entre les deux yeux.*

*Vous êtes tout au moins en retard d'une heure.*

*En grande parure ; en grande toilette.*

*En grand uniforme ; en grande tenue.*

*En grand costume.*

*En habit habillé.*

*En petite tenue.*

*En habit de tous les jours.*

*Faire de l'embarras, du tracas.*

*Il est tracassier.*



LIST No. 6. *Continued.*

To have the gift of gab.  
 To gain the day, to excel.  
 To read by candle-light.  
 To read by lamp-light.  
 To read by gas-light.  
 To read by the light of a fire.  
 To get over a wall.  
 To get over a difficulty.  
 To get over an illness.  
 To go over a bridge.  
 To pass through a town, &c.  
 Give me credit for patience.  
 Silence gives consent.  
 To give battle.  
 He gave us the slip.  
 These gloves will give.  
 To raise a hue and cry against a person.  
 To raise a report.  
 To raise suspicion.  
 He could not raise a dollar.  
 To rake up old quarrels.  
 Drinking glass.  
 Wine glass.  
 Opera glass.  
 Swinging glass.  
 Looking glass.  
 Mirror.  
 Spy glass. Telescope.  
 Hour glass.  
 Sash (window) of a coach.

## LIST No. 7.

To be acceptable.  
 That money is very acceptable to me.  
 Does that accommodate you?  
 It would be a great accommodation to me.  
 To turn a thing to account.  
 To turn that to account.  
 To put in an advertisement.  
 I cannot afford it.  
 I am sure you spend more than you can afford.  
 You do not allow for the difficulties which may  
 have detained him on his journey.  
 Give me any book you like.  
 To be dull of apprehension.  
 To make an April-fool.

*Full, &c. Continued.*

*Avoir la langue bien pendue.*  
*L'emporter.*  
*Lire à la chandelle.*  
*Lire à la lampe.*  
*Lire au gaz.*  
*Lire au jeu.*  
*Passer par dessus un mur.*  
*Surmonter une difficulté.*  
*Revenir, se rétablir d'une maladie.*  
*Traverser un pont.*  
*Passer par, &c.*  
*Convenez que j'ai en de la patience.*  
*Qui ne dit mot, consent.*  
*Livrer bataille.*  
*Il nous a plantés là.*  
*Ces gants prêteront.*  
*Poursuivre une personne à cor et à cri.*  
*Faire courir un bruit.*  
*Faire naître des soupçons.*  
*Il ne trouverait pas un dollar à emprunter.*  
*Réveiller le chat qui dort.*  
*Verre. m.*  
*Petit verre. m.*  
*Lorgnette. f.*  
*Pysché. f.*  
*Mirbir. m.*  
*Glace. f.*  
*Longue-vue. f.*  
*Sablier. m.*  
*Glace. f.*

*To be acceptable, &c.*

*Venir à propos.*  
*Cet argent me vient fort à propos.*  
*Cela vous arrange-t-il?*  
*Cela m'arrangerait infiniment.*  
*Tirer parti d'une chose.*  
*Tirez parti de cela, mettez cela à profit.*  
*Faire insérer une annonce.*  
*Je n'en ai pas les moyens.*  
*Je suis certain que vous dépassez vos moyens, que*  
*vous dépensez au delà de vos moyens.*  
*Vous ne faites pas la part des difficultés qui peu-*  
*vent l'avoir retardé pendant son voyage.*  
*Donnez-moi le premier livre venu.*  
*Avoir la conception dure.*  
*Donner un poisson d'Avril.*

LIST No. 7. *Continued.*

That is no argument for such a step.

To walk arm in arm.

Dark as pitch.

You may as well do it.

Shall I bring the papers?

You may as well.

Inasmuch as he has not written we may conclude  
that he will soon make his appearance.

To be attentive to a lady.

On an average.

These boards average ten feet.

Answer by return of post.

He is a great beau.

We had no beaux, no escorts.

Will you be my beau, my escort?

He likes to lie abed late.

It is my turn to play.

There is no speaking to him.

There is no going out to-day.

It is all over with him.

What is that to you?

To the best of my belief.

May I trouble you to ring the parlor bell?

I have thought better of it.

One bird in the hand is worth two in the bush.

To be bandy-legged.

To be knock-kneed.

## LIST No. 8:

To stop short.

To cut the matter short.

We are short of money.

The wind has shifted.

It has shifted to the north.

Are you sick at sea?

The rolling of the ship makes one sick.

It makes me sick to see such things, it disgusts  
me, &c.

I sicken at that idea.

Sickly. Of a person.

*To be acceptable, &c. Continued.*

*Ce n'est pas là une raison pour une pareille de-  
marche.*

*Marcher bras dessus, bras dessous.*

*Noir comme dans un four.*

*Autant vaut-il que vous le fassiez.*

*Apporterai-je les journaux?*

*Je ne sais pourquoi non; il n'y aurait pas de mal.*

*Vu, considéré qu'il n'a pas écrit nous pouvons en  
conclure qu'il ne tardera pas à se présenter, à  
arriver.*

*Etre aux petits soins auprès d'une dame.*

*L'un dans l'autre, l'un portant l'autre.*

*La longueur moyenne de ces planches est de dix  
pieds, ces planches ont dix pieds de longueur  
l'une portant l'autre.*

*Répondez courrier par courrier.*

*C'est un élégant. Il se met avec recherche.*

*Nous n'avions pas de cavaliers.*

*Voulez-vous être mon cavalier?*

*Il aime à dormir la grasse matinée.*

*C'est à moi à jouer.*

*Il n'y a pas moyen de lui parler.*

*Il n'y a pas moyen de sortir aujourd'hui.*

*C'en est fait de lui.*

*Qu'est-ce que cela vous fait?*

*Autant que je puis le croire.*

*Voulez-vous bien tirer la sonnette du salon?*

*Je me suis ravisé. J'ai réfléchi.*

*Un tiens vaut deux tu l'auras.*

*Etre bancal.*

*Etre cagneux. Avoir les genoux en dedans.*

*Short, &c.*

*S'arrêter tout court.*

*Pour trancher net. Pour en finir.*

*Nous sommes court d'argent. Les eaux sont  
basses.*

*Le vent a changé.*

*Il a passé au nord.*

*Etes-vous malade en mer? Etes-vous sujet au  
mal de mer?*

*Le roulis du navire vous donne le mal de mer.*

*Cela me fait mal au cœur de voir des choses  
pareilles.*

*A cette idée je me sens défaillir. A cette idée le  
cœur me manque. L'idée seule me fait mal.*

*Maladif.*

LIST No. 8. *Continued.*

Sickly. Of a thing.  
 He is a good mathematician.  
 He is a good player (music, &c.).  
 He is not much of a player.  
 That is a good one!  
 Well now, really, that is a good one (rather too much).  
 It is no such thing.  
 I will do no such thing.  
 He a good painter! he is no such thing.  
 Do you take?  
 I don't take.  
 I take you at your word.  
 He talked so loud that I was obliged to take him down.  
 I should be glad to see him taken down.  
  
 He used to take him off perfectly.  
 He spoke ill of you, but I took him up sharply.  
  
 To talk big.  
 He set off as fast as his horse could carry him.  
 Those workmen of yours are very rude.  
 Mr. Thingumbob.  
 Mrs. Thingumbob.  
 I know what to think of it.

## LIST No. 9.

The police officers were watching him.  
  
 He is watched.  
 Watch him, he intends mischief.  
 Water-proof.  
 I am hard pushed for money, could you not lend me \$75?  
 You are always hard pushed for a livelihood.  
 How is it you cannot get on without borrowing from Tom, Dick, and Harry?  
 Which way are they gone?  
 Come this way.  
 Go that way.  
 We are going the same way.  
 They live over the way.  
 To have one's way.  
 To get out of the way.  
 He will return this day week.  
 This day three weeks.

*Short, &c. Continued*

*Insalubre.*  
*Il est fort en mathématiques.*  
*Il est très-fort (sur, &c.).*  
*Il n'est pas très-fort.*  
*C'est un peu fort!*  
*Par exemple, c'est trop fort.*  
  
*Il n'en est pas ainsi.*  
*Je n'en ferai rien.*  
*Lui être bon peintre! pas du tout, il ne l'est pas.*  
*Y êtes-vous?*  
*Je n'y suis pas.*  
*Je vous prends au mot.*  
*Il parlait si haut que je fus obligé de lui faire baisser le ton.*  
*Je serais bien aise de voir qu'on le rappelât à l'ordre.*  
*Il l'imitait à ravir.*  
*Il parlait mal de vous, mais je l'ai joliment rembarré, relevé.*  
*Se vanter. Faire le fanfaron,*  
*Il partit ventre à terre. Il partit à bride abattue.*  
*Vous avez là des ouvriers qui sont bien malhonnêtes.*  
*Monsieur Chose.*  
*Madame Chose.*  
*Je sais à quoi m'en tenir.*

*To watch, &c.*

*Les officiers de police étaient aux aguets pour le saisir.*  
*On le surveille.*  
*Ayez l'œil sur lui, il a de mauvais desseins.*  
*Imperméable.*  
*Les eaux sont basses, ne pourriez-vous me prêter \$75?*  
*Vous tirez toujours le diable par la queue. Comment se fait-il que vous ne puissiez pas faire vos affaires sans emprunter à Pierre et à Paul?*  
*De quel côté sont-ils allés?*  
*Venez par ici.*  
*Allez par là.*  
*Nous faisons même route.*  
*Ils demeurent de l'autre côté de la rue.*  
*Faire à sa tête, à sa guise.*  
*Se ranger.*  
*Il reviendra d'aujourd'hui en huit.*  
*D'aujourd'hui en trois semaines.*

LIST No. 9. *Continued.*

They are not allowed to go out on week days.  
 Leave well enough alone.  
 That is a thumper.  
 You should not wink at his doings.

## LIST No. 10.

I think we have passed the house.  
 He made the passage in a steam packet.  
 A tug.  
 A screw propeller.  
 Have you engaged your passage?  
 I am not concerned in it.  
 You are concerned in it.  
 He is particular in his dress.

Do not forget to return his call, you know how particular he is.  
 She is very touchy.  
 We were over our shoes in mud.  
 They are not over rich.  
 He is not over modest.  
 The letter was among many papers, I must have overlooked it.

Run as fast as your legs can carry you, or else you will never overtake him.  
 He orders me about as if I were his servant.  
 I have ordered a coat of the new tailor.  
 Have you ordered your carriage?  
 I ordered my carriage for five o'clock.  
 Order my carriage up.  
 His orders could not be misunderstood.  
 I say, old fellow, come this way.  
 Nonsense! what nonsense!  
 To have occasion to observe.  
 I have been waiting for the last hour.  
 He is quite used up.  
 Just tell me how it happened.

*To watch, &c. Continued.*

*On ne leur permet pas de sortir les jours ouvriers.  
 Le mieux est l'ennemi du bien.  
 En voilà une bonne.  
 Vous ne devriez pas fermer les yeux sur ce qu'il fait.*

*Passage, &c.*

*Je crois que nous avons dépassé la maison.  
 Il fit la traversée dans un paquebôt à vapeur.  
 Un remorqueur.  
 Un vapeur à hélice.  
 Avez-vous retenu votre passage?  
 Je n'y suis pour rien.  
 Vous y êtes pour quelque chose.  
 Il est soigné dans sa mise; il se met avec beaucoup de soin.  
 N'oubliez pas de lui rendre sa visite; vous savez combien il tient à ces choses-là.  
 Elle est très-susceptible.  
 Nous avions de la boue pardessus nos souliers.  
 Ils ne sont pas des plus riches.  
 Il ne pêche pas par excès de modestie.  
 La lettre se trouvait parmi un nombre de papiers, elle m'aura échappé. Je ne l'aurai pas aperçue.  
 Je n'y aurai pas fait attention.  
 Courez à toutes jambes; sans cela vous ne le rattraperez jamais.  
 Il me fait aller comme si j'étais son domestique.  
 J'ai commandé un habit chez le nouveau tailleur.  
 Avez-vous dit que l'on mette les chevaux?  
 J'ai demandé ma voiture pour cinq heures.  
 Faites avancer ma voiture.  
 Il n'y avait pas à se tromper sur ses ordres.  
 Dites donc, mon vieux, venez par ici.  
 Bah! allons donc!  
 Etre à même d'observer.  
 Voilà une heure que j'attends.  
 Il ne sait plus sur quel pied danser.  
 Dites-moi un peu comment la chose est arrivée.*



# Second Cours d'Idiotismes.

No. 1.

## APPLICATION.

PRENDRE.

To get a start.  
To lay the blame on a person.  
To take a thing for truth.  
The river will freeze over.  
The fire broke out in the house.  
It was fortunate for me.

Q. If you do not get a start they will lay the blame on you.

Did you not go into the country before the fire broke out in your house?

1

R. You must not take for truth everything that is told you. I cannot get a start until the river freezes over.

I did, and it was fortunate for me that I did.

To conceive friendship for a person.

To allow oneself to be allured by promises.

To proceed properly.

To go to work.

To set about it.

To proceed properly.

To get through (*achever*.)

Why do you conceive friendship for those persons? Let me advise you not to allow yourself to be allured by their promises.

How will you go to work to get through before twelve o'clock?

2

I know that we should not take for truth everything that is said of them. We are told, however, that they proceed properly in everything they do.

If I knew how to proceed properly, I could get through before eleven.

Take it all in all.

In so bungling a way.

(*Si gauchement*.)

To go the wrong way to work.

Why do your workmen set about their work in so bungling a way?

I got here in time this morning; I was lucky in getting a start, was I not?

3

You are wrong to think they are bunglers. Take it all in all, the work they do is quite as good as your workmen's.

You were; before your arrival everybody was going the wrong way to work.

No. 2.

ALLER.

To be back again presently.

To step into the next room.

(*Passer dans la chambre à côté*.)

To be slow and sure.

To go the right way to work.

To be at stake.

His fortune is at stake.

How he goes at it.

Wait for me a few minutes, I shall be back again presently. Meanwhile you may step into the next room and tell your brother to go on slowly and surely; he will succeed.

Look at those little fellows playing, do you see them yonder?

4

I saw him a little while ago. He told me that unless his partner went the right way to work he would have to give up the whole affair. He seems to think the reputation of his house is at stake.

I have been looking at them some time. How they go at it!

To go to work.

He likes to have his own way.

He is far gone or low.

It will go hard with him.

It is getting late, I must be going.

I told you to go to work an hour ago. Why did you not? You do not attend to what I say; you seem to have your own way too much.

5

I did not set about working because I had to sit up with my brother last night. He is dangerously ill, and is so low that I shall have to attend him all day. The physician says it will go very hard with him. It is getting late now, I must be going.



How goes it with you?  
As the story goes.  
To go over to France.

To let go one's hold.  
To hold on (*tenir ferme.*)  
To go to law about.

(*Plaidier au sujet de.*)  
As the world goes.  
Any suit whatever.  
(*N'importe quel procès.*)  
The sun went down.  
The wind will go down.  
To go to law.

(*Plaidier.*)

To go off (goods).  
To go off (fire arms).  
Going! going! going! gone!  
To go over to England.  
Go about your business.  
Auction. (*Enchères f.*)  
Unawares.

(*Par mégarde.*)  
To bother to death.  
(*Ennuyer à la mort.*)  
Within two months.  
(*D'ici à deux mois.*)

To go over to the enemy.  
To take place.  
(*Avoir lieu.*)  
Pass the bottle around.  
To burn the throat.  
The joke goes round.

To put on a smile.  
Go to him.  
I would go through fire and water for him.  
He will have his own way.  
Go about your business.  
It will go hard with him.

Good morning! How are you to-day?

As the story goes, they say it will go hard with him unless he goes over to France.

If you let go your hold you will hurt yourself. Do you wish me to put something under your feet?

Does Gantheaume intend to go to law about the mortgage?

Do you think the wind will fall when the sun goes down?

How did the goods go off at the auction to-day? were the sales lively?

Did not your gun go off suddenly?

Go over to England! No, sir, you shall not. Really, you bother me to death with your whims. Go about your business, and let me alone.

What was the name of a superior officer who went over to the enemy at the Battle of Waterloo?

That brandy is very mild. It will not burn your throat as the other we drank yesterday. Pass the bottle around.

You need not put on a smile. I tell you the affair is a very serious one. Go to your brother and tell him that, although his friends are disposed to go through fire and water for him, I am afraid it will go very hard with him.

6

Very well, I thank you.

By the way, what have you heard about our friend Froisart?

I can hold on a little longer if you will put that bench under my feet. Unless you do, I shall soon have to let go my hold.

He does not. As the world goes, he knows he would lose any suit.

I think not, it may though.

7

They went off much better than I expected.

I attended four auctions; there were many more I could not attend. All along the street nothing was heard all day but Going! going! going! gone!

It did. I pulled the trigger unawares.

Whether you like my going over to England or not, I shall have to go, and that within two months.

8

His name was Bourmont. His defection took place on the eve of the battle.

Here it is. Help yourself. By the way, do you know that your granddaughter is very angry at some joke that is going round?

9

I put on a smile because I was thinking of something else. I know my brother's difficulties are serious. He will have his own way. He sends about their business all those who wish to advise him.

## No. 3.

To SET.

To set in order.  
 To set things right.  
 To set words to music.  
 To set to the tune of.  
 To set a hen.  
 Tune, (air *m.*)  
 Song, (romance *f.*)  
 Just after, (*de suite après*).  
 To lay, (*pondre.*)

To set a going.  
 To set the teeth on edge.  
 To set an edge on a razor.  
 To set a leg, a bone.  
 To set sail.  
 To set too great a value on.  
 To set the cart before the horse.  
 Set me right if I am wrong.  
 Let me set you right.  
 To set a picture in its light.  
 Hobby, (*dada m.*)

I will set this affair at rest.  
 The question is forever set at rest.  
 To set the world at defiance.  
 To set aside all considerations.

To set up an establishment.  
 To be at variance with.  
 (*être mal avec.*)  
 To set down as a principle.  
 To set down in writing.  
 A sheet apart.  
 (*Une feuille à part.*)

To set down passengers.  
 The weather has set in for rain.  
 To land passengers.  
 One of Caillard's stages.  
 (*Une des diligences Caillard.*)  
 On the way.  
 (*En route.*)  
 To be in waiting.  
 (*Stationner.*)

When you go down stairs, please to tell Thomas to put my papers in order.

Can you tell me the name of the composer who set the words of this song to music?

How long has that hen been setting?

What has kept you so long? I have been waiting for you this hour.

Be careful how you act. Try and go the right way to work, and especially do not put the cart before the horse.

Did not your lawyer write to you that he thought he could set the affair at rest?

Do you know whether Mr. Gaston has set up his establishment yet?

You say you went to Nemours last week in one of Caillard's stages. Where were you set down?

Where does the steamboat intend to land her passengers?

## 10

He has already set things right in your room.

I knew once, but have forgotten it. He is a pupil of the Conservatory. Last year he set the words you wrote to the tune of "*La Vieille Virginie.*"

I set her about ten days ago, just after she had done laying.

## 11

Just as you went out Mr. Le-compte came in. Unfortunately I alluded to his unfortunate hobby, and you know that when you set him a going on that subject he never ends.

I am very glad to be set right when I am wrong—allow me, however, to set you right in this matter; I have proceeded properly, and I think that all the pictures are now in their true light.

## 12

In his letter he sets down as a principle, that unless you are prepared to set the world at defiance, he cannot set the question at rest forever.

He says that you must set aside all considerations for the present.

He has not. He seems to be at variance with some of his creditors. He wishes you to write to him immediately. Do so and set down your reasons in writing on a sheet apart.

## 13

I did not wish to be set down on the way. Most of the passengers were set down about eleven miles and a half from Nemours.

If the weather sets in for rain she will not be able to land them at all, because there will be no hacks in waiting.

## No. 4.

To SHOOT.

To shoot, to fire with ball.

To shoot with shot.

To shoot at a bird.

To be out of shot.

To practise shooting.

He shot him through the arm.

He was shot for having struck an officer.

To bring down (*abattre*.)

To shoot by like lightning.

Cannon shot.

Cannister.

Small-shot.

Buckshot.

Musket-ball.

There is the place where the shot struck.

To have something left, (*de reste*.)

To accommodate.

To stand aside.

(*Se ranger*.)To point, (*arrêter* or *être en arrêt*.)

He is a dead shot.

To practise.

(*S'exercer*.)

You don't say so!

To get over.

(*Passer par dessus*.)

They must be thick about here.

(*Il doit y en avoir en masse par ici*.)

## No. 5.

To be getting late.

To be back again presently.

To know all about a thing.

It will go hard with him.

To be in a bad way.

(*être en mauvaise passe*.)

To keep one's wit about one.

Scrape (*escapade f.*)

How did you shoot this morning, with ball or with small shot?

If you fire upon everything you see, you will soon be out of shot.

Was not the corporal shot in the arm?

Did you not see a man go by this way just now?

Do you know where the shot struck?

Do you want small shot or buck shot?

Have you any shot left? If you have hand me a load or two.

Well done! I see you are a dead shot.

Before shooting as well as you do, I shall have to practise a long while.

I flushed another as I was getting over a wall.

I cannot listen to you now. It is getting late. I must be going. I shall be back again presently if I do not find Leclerc in.

The last time I saw Leclerc he told me he was very uneasy about your brother. He added that he thought your brother was in a bad way. He hoped, however, that he would keep his wits about him, and would act like a man.

## 14

Lacoste had loaded with ball, he fired upon a squirrel and missed him; my gun was loaded with shot—I brought him down.

I have practised shooting so little lately that I intend to fire upon every bird I see.

The dragoon shot him through the body.

## 15

I did: he was on a grey mare—he shot by like lightning.

This is the place where it struck; it was a shot from a 64 pounder.

I want two musket-balls and three buck-shot; you may send me a pound of shot No. 8.

## 16

I have about three loads left. I will give you one. Will that accommodate you?

Stand aside, I see my dog pointing.

I missed a partridge just now.

It is true he shot by like lightning.

You don't say so! they must be very thick about here.

## 17

Well, I have nothing to do. I can wait for you half an hour.

Leclerc knows all about my brother's scrape. Ask him whether he thinks it will go hard with him

Why do you keep such people about you?

He is very uneasy about his brother.

I would send those people about their business if I were in your place.

To set about work.

He has his wits about him.

Do not be uneasy, I will bring it about.

Thoroughly.

(à fond.)

Why does your brother keep such people about him; are you not very uneasy about him?

You engaged a new workman this morning, did you not?

Do you think your brother will succeed in his undertaking?

I have been uneasy about him for some time: I really do not know why he keeps such men about him; were I in his place I would send them about their business.

I did; he came well recommended. He set about his work as a man who understood it thoroughly.

Do not be uneasy, he always has his wits about him. He brings about everything he undertakes.

Why all this ado about nothing? I made no more ado, but went on with my work.

However annoying those things may be, do not notice them.

To be annoyed.

You look annoyed.

To have just.

To come along (*passer*).

It seems to me that the captain makes much ado about nothing; if I were in your place I would not notice what he says. Sometimes he does not seem to have his wits about him.

What is the matter with you, you look annoyed.

However annoying the things he says, I generally do not notice them. This morning he scolded a long time, however I made no more ado, and went on with my work.

I am very much annoyed: I have just missed the train, and shall have to wait two hours until the next comes along.

Does this noise annoy you?

The least thing annoys him.

You look annoyed.

She was at anchor along side of us.

Boats are not allowed to come along side.

He had better study.

(*Il fera bien d'étudier.*)

Come along with me.

If you feel like it.

I do not feel like it.

All his things lie about his room.

I have no time to spare.

(*Je n'ai pas de temps à perdre.*)

Tell your brother that if the noise of my workmen annoys him, he had better study in the third story.

Come along with me, and, if you feel like it, we will take a glass of wine together.

If I were in your place I would not mind what he says; the least thing annoys him. This morning he looked very much annoyed because, after going to the ship, anchored alongside the steamer, he was told boats were not allowed to come along side.

I do not feel like it at all. I have no time to spare. All my things are lying about in my room. I shall have to go and set them in order.



Boats are allowed to come along side.

Did you ever see anything like it?

To give like for like.

That is just like him.

Let us act like men.

The mate.

(*Le second.*)

To hail.

(*Héler.*)

To act in accordance with.

(*Agir d'après.*)

To annoy.

(*Contrarier.*)

Everybody about him.

(*Tous ceux qui l'entourent.*)

Did you go to the ship this morning? If you did, tell me whether you were able to see your brother?

Was the captain on board?

Well, that is just like him. Half the time he acts like a man who wishes to annoy everybody about him.

## 21

I did, and I was much surprised to find that the boats were not allowed to come along side. I cannot tell you why. I never saw anything like it. I wish I could give them like for like.

He was not. I hailed the mate. He told me he was acting in accordance with Captain Vailant's orders.

## 22

That is just like him.  
He was like a father to me.  
To go through fire and water for.

(*Se jeter au feu pour.*)

By this morning's mail.

(*Par le courrier de ce matin.*)

To take a fancy to.

(*S'attacher à.*)

To be under obligations to.

(*Avoir des obligations à.*)

I understand you received all the money you wanted by this morning's mail; is that so?

You are right. He sent you the money because he knew you would make a good use of it. That is just like him; he is the most generous of men. As for myself I am under great obligations to him. He has always been a father to me.

It is. It was sent me by your old friend Forbin. When he takes a fancy to a person he would go through fire and water for him.

## 23

Give me a lift.  
A man offered to give me a lift in his wagon.

It was a good lift.

I treated the man at the first inn.

A man in a barouche.

(*Un homme en barouche.*)

To lift a trunk.

(*Enlever une malle.*)

To get through (*finir*).

Queer.

(*C'est drôle.*)

Come along.

(*Venez donc.*)

Standing still.

(*Debout à ne rien faire.*)

There you are, standing still, come along; don't you see I cannot lift this trunk? Give me a lift.

How did you get here so soon; did any one give you a lift?

What do you want to do with it? If you want to put it in the wagon, I cannot give you a lift until I have got through with this letter.

A man in a barouche gave me a lift. It was a capital lift. I offered to treat him, but he said he did not feel like it. Queer, was it not?



The moon is going down.  
To lie in the open air.  
To be much jaded.

(*N'en pourvoir plus.*)

Pocket-compass.

(*Boussole de poche.*)

To try to find out how the  
land lies.

(*Essayer de s'orienter.*)

To succeed in.

(*Réussir.*)

To have time left.

(*Avoir du temps de reste.*)

These goods will lie long on  
your hands.

## No. 6.

Who wanted us to join him in  
the oil speculation.

(*Qui voulait que nous nous  
associassions avec lui dans la  
spéculation d'huile.*)

You are full an hour behind  
your time.

To look a person full in the  
face.

To have the gift of the gab.  
I let him talk on.

(*Je l'ai laissé aller.*)

Silence gives consent.

At once.

(*Sans faire ni une ni deux.*)

To lock.

(*Fermer à clef.*)

To go around.

(*Faire le tour.*)

To get over.

(*Passer par dessus.*)

Full dressed. { Of ladies.  
Military men.  
Professions.  
Gentlemen.  
Civilians.

Military undress.

With the exception of.

(*à l'exception de.*)

Violin player.

(*Violon, m.*)

To excel. To gain the day.

How far is it from here to  
Fort Independence? Do you  
think we can get there to-night  
before the moon goes down?

If you have any time left  
write to your partner in Nash-  
ville, and ask him whether he  
thinks the last invoice of goods  
will lie long on his hands.

## 24

It is more than forty miles.  
Our mules are much jaded, and  
I have lost my pocket-compass.  
I am afraid we shall have to lie  
in the open air to-night. I have  
been trying to find out how the  
land lies for over an hour. I  
cannot succeed.

I need not write to him, I  
know they will not.

## 25

This morning I met the man  
who wanted us to join him in  
the oil speculation. The fellow  
has the gift of the gab, and did  
all he could to persuade me.  
As I knew he wanted to de-  
ceive us, I let him talk on. He  
seemed to think that silence  
gave consent.

Why do you come so late?  
You are full two hours behind  
your time.

He came to me also full an  
hour after his appointment. I  
would not listen to all his fine  
reasons. I looked at him full in  
the face, and said to him at once:  
"Sir, you wish to take us in."  
He looked as if he did not know  
what to make of it.

The garden-gate was locked,  
and I could not get over the  
wall. I had to go around and  
cross the bridge.

## 26

Were all the ladies in full  
dress at your uncle's *soirée* last  
night?

Who is the best violin-player  
you ever heard?

They were all in full dress.  
The officers were in full dress  
also, with the exception of one  
or two who were in undress.  
All the gentlemen were in full  
dress.

Sivori is the best I ever heard.  
He excels all the others in my  
opinion.

To make a fuss about (*au sujet de*).

To read by { Candle-light.  
Lamp-light.  
Gas-light.  
By the light of the  
fire.

Without a shade.

(*Sans abat-jour.*)

To be out of oil.

(*N'avoir plus d'huile.*)

To study by candle-light.

One day or other.

(*Un jour ou l'autre.*)

To get over { A bridge.  
A difficulty.  
An illness.

You make a great fuss about the gas, what is the matter with it?

We are out of oil, what shall we do this evening to prepare our lessons for to-morrow?

Can you not get over that difficulty?

When did you hear from your cousin?

To pass through a town.

In full uniform.

Military undress.

On their way to.

(*En route pour.*)

He gave us the slip.

To raise a hue and cry against a person.

The gloves are rather tight;

(*Les gants sont un peu justes.*)

The gloves will give.

To carry the day.

Kid gloves.

(*Gants de peau.*)

Drinking-glass.

Wine-glass.

Opera-glass.

Swinging-glass.

Looking-glass.

Mirror.

Spy-glass.

Hour-glass.

Sash of a coach.

Auction (*encan m.*)

Received payment.

(*Pouracquit.*)

To raise a report.

He could not raise a dollar.

To raise suspicions.

To rake up old quarrels.

26 Continued.

The gas is good enough, but I cannot read by gas-light without a shade. I can't find mine, lend me yours if you do not wish to use it.

27

We shall have to study by candle-light. I borrowed a few candles a week ago, knowing that we should be out of oil one day or other.

I cannot; I have nobody to explain it to me.

I heard from him last week. He has got over his illness.

28

Did the 12th Regiment pass through New-York on their way to Washington?

Why did not the other clerks come with you?

Where did you buy those kid gloves?

They passed New-York, Philadelphia and Baltimore. They passed through all those cities in full dress.

When they found out we had very little money left, they gave us the slip. When we get back we shall raise a hue and cry against them.

I bought them at Delille's. They are rather light, but they will give after wearing them a little. Delille carries the day for gloves.

29

Make out a list of the articles you bought at the last auction. I should like to pay for them as soon as possible.

Here is the list:

½ doz. drinking-glasses	-	\$2.50
2 doz. wine-glasses	-	5.00
3 opera-glasses	-	15.00
1 swinging-glass	-	40.00
1 small looking-glass	-	.50
2 mirrors	-	75.00
1 spy-glass	-	10.00
1 hour-glass	-	1.00

\$

Received payment.

Who raised the report that we could not raise a dollar on our property in Boston?

I do not like to raise suspicions, nevertheless I think I know who did. Sometime ago I had the same difficulty with the person I allude to: but enough, I do not like to rake up old quarrels.

You came to me full an hour  
behind your time.

To get over a difficulty.

Give me credit for patience.

To give as an excuse.

(*Donner pour excuse.*)

To attend a *soirée*.

In full dress.

DEAR FRIEND :

I omitted yesterday to tell you, when I met you, that your son came to me the day before yesterday full an hour behind his time. He gave as an excuse that not being able to get over the difficulties of his lesson, he had to study it longer than usually. I gave him credit for patience and am disposed to excuse him.

Let me know whether I am to attend your *soirée* in full dress, and believe me,

Yours, truly,

EUGENE LEROY.

No. 7.

Does that accommodate you ?  
That money is very acceptable  
to me.

To turn a thing to account.

I cannot afford it.

To put in an advertisement.

You spend more money than  
you can afford.

If I were to lend you \$50 be-  
tween this and Saturday next,  
would it accommodate you ?

Can you afford to put adver-  
tisements in every paper ?

31

The money would be more ac-  
ceptable if you could lend it me  
on Thursday. Unless you do I  
shall not be able to turn the  
speculation to account.

I cannot afford it. I spend  
more money now than I can af-  
ford.

To be dull of apprehension.  
You do not allow for the diffi-  
culties I have to overcome.

To make an April fool of a per-  
son.

(*Donner un poisson d'avril à  
quelqu'un*).

You say that young man is  
dull of apprehension, but it  
seems to me that you do not al-  
low for the difficulties he has to  
overcome.

32

Besides being dull of appre-  
hension he does not study as he  
should. Yesterday, instead of  
applying himself to his lessons,  
he amused himself all day by  
making April fools of everybody  
around him.

To be as dark as pitch.  
Give me any book you like.  
Inasmuch as he has not writ-  
ten we may conclude that he will  
soon make his appearance.

You may as well do it.

Shall I bring you the papers ?

A. You may as well.

It is as dark as pitch in your  
room; light the gas and give  
me any book you like. Inas-  
much as I cannot go out until  
the rain is over, I may as well  
read until then.

33

I have sent all my books to  
the binder's. Shall I bring you  
the newspapers ? You may find  
something interesting in them.  
You may as well. There is one  
article in yesterday's paper that  
I should like to read.

To walk arm in arm.  
To be as dark as pitch.  
That is no argument for such  
a step.

To mistake a person's voice for  
that of another.

To be attentive to a lady.

To visit.

(*Faire des visites à*).

You say that you saw Mary  
walking arm in arm with her  
beau. How could you distin-  
guish them ? About the hour  
you mention it was as dark as  
pitch.

How long is it since your  
brother has been attentive to  
Miss Leblanc ?

34

That is no argument why I  
should not recognize them. On  
the contrary, I could not mistake  
their voices. As they could not  
see me they passed quite near  
me.

He visits the family once or  
twice a week, but that is no ar-  
gument why they should say  
that he is attentive to the young  
lady.

The boards average ten feet.  
To the best of my belief.  
To turn a thing to account.  
By return of post.  
He is a great beau.  
We had no beaux.  
Will you be my beau?  
There is no going out to-day.  
A storm is brewing.

(*Il s'amasse un orage*).

Are those boards longer than these? If they average more, Mr. Lemoine wishes you to answer by return of post.

Who is to be your beau at the General's party this evening?

The fir boards average more than the pine. The latter average ten feet. As I shall have to go out presently, you will oblige me by writing to Mr. Lemoine yourself. Tell him also, that to the best of my belief he will be able to turn to a better account the pine boards than the fir.

Mr. Recherché was to be my beau, but I am afraid there is no going out. A great storm is brewing.

He is quite a beau now.  
To be bandy-legged.  
It is a pity he is.  
(*C'est dommage qu'il soit.*)  
It is my turn to play.  
To be knock-kneed.  
There is no going out.  
I have thought better of it.  
As to his money matters.  
(*Quant à ses affaires d'argent.*)  
To the best of my belief.  
To lie a-bed late.  
It is all over with him.  
A bird in the hand is better than two in the bush.

Have you met young Sauvin since your return?

It is your turn to go and see that tall knock-kneed young fellow, if there be any going out to-day. Tell him I have thought better of the offer made him. My opinion is, that a bird in the hand is better than two in the bush.

I had not been long back before I met him. He is quite a beau now. It is a pity he is a little bandy-legged.

It is almost impossible to see him in the morning. He likes to lie a-bed late, and to the best of my belief he avoids his acquaintances the rest of the day. As to his money matters it is all over with him.

## No. 8.

### TO STOP SHORT.

Mr. Thingum.  
Mrs. Thingummy.  
To be short of money.  
To cut the matter short.  
I will do no such thing.  
To talk loud.  
I was obliged to take her down.  
To be very rude.  
To take up sharply.  
(*Rembarrer de la bonne manière.*)  
To ring the parlor-bell.  
(*Sonner pour le Salon.*)

You were going to say something. Why did you stop short?

## 37

I was going to say that Mrs. Thingummy called upon me this morning, saying that she was short of money. She wanted to borrow one hundred and fifty dollars. To cut the matter short, I told her that I was short of money myself, and that I should do no such thing. She talked so loud that I was obliged to take her down. Among other things, she said that those servants of yours had been very rude when she rang the parlor-bell yesterday. She said that she had taken them up sharply.



The wind has shifted.  
The wind is shifting to the north.

The rolling of the ship makes me sick.

To be subject to sea-sickness.

To wish to be in.

(*Vouloir être arrivé.*)

A healthy person.

An unhealthy country.

To get over.

(*Revenir de.*)

Plantation.

(*Habitation.*)

Has the wind shifted? I wish we were in. The rolling of the ship makes me sick.

Are not some parts of the Island of Cuba very unhealthy?

## 38

It is shifting to the north. We shall soon be in. I am sorry you are so subject to sea-sickness. Formerly I was very subject to it myself, but I have got over it. They say that sickly persons do not suffer as much from sea-sickness as healthy persons.

Some parts are; especially in the neighborhood of marshes. I was always very sickly on your brother's plantation.

## 39

Mrs. What-do-you-call-her.  
Confound it!  
You don't say so!  
Really that is too much.  
He is over fifty.  
To be sickly.  
It makes me sick to hear such things.

Next door.

(*à côté de.*)

Pay, (*solde, f.*)

To mean.

(*Vouloir dire.*)

What do you think I heard yesterday evening? Mrs. What-do-you-call-her—Confound it! I cannot recollect names. You know who I mean though: the widow who lives next door to your uncle's. Well, she is to marry that old bandy-legged fellow, Captain Belleville.

You don't say so. Really, that is rather too much. Why, he is over fifty, and has nothing but his pay. Besides, he is very sickly. It makes me sick to see such things.

## 40

He is a capital mathematician.  
To be a fine performer on an instrument.

To accompany on the violin, on the flute, &c.

Not to be much of a player.

He, a good player?

He is no such thing.

I know what to think of it.

How long has your cousin studied mathematics?

Is not that young lady a very fine performer on the piano?

He has been studying mathematics more than four years. He has the reputation of being a capital mathematician.

She is. Her cousin accompanies her on the violin, but he is not much of a player. Her brother Thomas, who is a very fine flute player, accompanies her now and then when he has time.

Who told you he was a good player? He a good player!—he is no such thing. I have heard him often, and I know what to think of it.



Do you take?

I don't take.

A pun.

(*Un calembour.*)

To take a person off.

To be good at taking a person  
off.

To take a person down.

To take a person up sharply.

Half the time.

(*La moitié du temps.*)

Horrid (*atroce*).

Punster.

(*Calembouriste.*)

Old Potier has queer ideas: he says he likes black stockings because they are always white; do you take?

I do not. Half the time I do not understand his puns. He is very good at taking off everybody. He is a horrid punster. Whenever he makes a pun he ought to be taken down. He has one good quality though. Whenever anybody speaks ill of his friends he takes him up sharply.

## No. 9.

The police officers were watching him.

He is watched.

Watch him, he intends mischief.

Water-proof.

We are going the same way.

They live over the way.

Next door,

(*à côté.*)

You need not go very far.

(*Vous n'avez pas beaucoup de chemin à faire.*)

To prowl (*rôder.*)

Tell Richard he must watch those men continually prowling about his store. We know they intend mischief.

Are you going up or down the street? I am going up, and if we are going the same way, you would oblige me much by showing me the way to Bouland's store.

He knows it as well as you do. They are watched continually. Yesterday several police officers were watching them for the purpose of arresting them, and recovering the case of water-proof hats it is supposed some of them stole more than two months ago.

You need not go very far. His family live over the way and his store is next door.

To have just.

He is to be here.

This day three weeks.

I am hard pushed for money.

Which way are they gone?

This day week.

Come this way.

Go that way.

We are going the same way.

To collect (*encaisser*).

Firm (*maison f.*)

Last (*la dernière fois.*)

How are you to-day? Do you know what I have just heard? One of Larue's agents is to be here this day week to collect the debts of the New Orleans' firm.

Which way did your nephew go? Was he not coming this way when you saw him?

Let him come. I shall not be able to pay him this day three weeks. I am very hard pushed for money. I do not suppose that I could raise \$200 this week.

He was going that way when I saw him last. He was going the same way as your brother.

I understand.

(*Me dit-on.*)

To be hard pushed for a living.  
To keep on.

(*Continuer à.*)

How is it you cannot get on without borrowing from Tom, Dick and Harry?

That is no way to do business.  
(*ce n'est pas comme cela qu'on fait des affaires.*)

That will injure your business very much.

(*Cela fera grand tort à vos affaires.*)

To wink at their doings.

(*Fermer les yeux sur ce qu'ils font.*)

That is a thumper.

No. 10.

To return a call.

(*Rendre une visite.*)

Do not forget to return his call.  
You know how particular he is in such matters.

To get dark.

She is very touchy.

To get the start of.

Run as fast as your legs can carry you, or else you will never overtake him.

To pass a house.

(*Dépasser une maison.*)

To be sea-sick.

(*Avoir le mal de mer.*)

Sailing vessel.

(*Navire à voiles.*)

He made the passage in a steam-packet.

I am not concerned in it.

You are concerned in it.

The letter was among many papers; you must have overlooked it.

All his things lie about his room.

Have you engaged your passage?

Your brother Richard, I understand, is still hard pushed for a livelihood. I always told him what would happen, if he kept on borrowing from Tom, Dick and Harry. That is no way to do business.

Why do you wink at their doings? They say you even give them brandy.

Did you not say a little while ago that you had returned Mr. Guillet's call? If you have not, you ought to do so, for he is very particular in such matters.

Have the men gone who were with you just now?

How did you make the passage—in a steamer or in a sailing vessel?

You ask me whether I am concerned in that law suit. I am not, are you?

I cannot find the letter I wrote this morning. Have you seen it?

44

I always told him he was wrong in doing so. His allowing his workmen to go out so often on week-days has injured his business very much.

That is a thumper. Who can have told you that? Wink at their doings! I never have and never will.

45

After having engaged my passage on the Magenta, I left the packet-office to call upon him. It was getting dark and I passed his house. I know how particular he is in such matters. I know he is very touchy also. I shall not fail to call on him tomorrow before 12 o'clock.

They have. They have got the start of you; unless you run as fast as your legs will carry you, you will never catch up with them.

46

We made the passage in one of the new French steam-packets. I was the only person sea-sick.

I am not, my brother was; but I believe he is not concerned in it now.

I saw it among many papers. You must have overlooked it. Why do you let your papers lie about your room.

They are not over-rich.  
He is not over-modest.  
To dress well.

(*Se mettre bien.*)

He is particular in his dress.  
I understand.

(*On me dit.*)

Be particular in what you eat.  
Tea does not agree with me.

(*Le thé me fait mal.*)

That young man is not over-rich, and still he dresses very well. How does he manage?  
(*Faire.*)

Why are you not more particular in what you eat? Neither tea nor coffee agree with you. You should take neither.

47

I really could not tell you. He certainly is very particular in his dress. I understand he owes his tailor a good deal of money. I know he is not over-modest.

You are wrong to say I am not particular in what I eat and drink. I have not tasted coffee for six months. I take a cup of tea now and then, but not very often.

To get a ducking.

(*être trempé.*)

To be wet to the skin.

(*être trempé jusqu'aux os.*)

We were over our shoes in mud.

There you are pouting again.

(*Vous voilà encore à boudier.*)

You are too touchy.

To order about.

He orders me about as if I were his servant.

You got a ducking yesterday, did you not?

What is the matter with you?  
There you are, pouting again.  
You are too touchy.

48

We are wet to the skin. When we got home we had mud over our shoes.

I am not touchy, but I do not like to be ordered about like a servant. You would be quite as touchy as I am, were you ordered about in the same way.

Have you ordered your carriage?

I ordered my carriage for five o'clock.

Shall I order your carriage up?

I say, old fellow, come this way.

I have ordered a coat of the new tailor.

To be touchy.

Nonsense! what nonsense!

She is particular in what she says.

Go and order my carriage, I want to go to your tailor's to order a coat, a vest, and two pairs of pants. I ordered my carriage for five o'clock, it is now near six.

I think I have occasion to observe that people are very touchy in this house. What do you think of it? Am I right or wrong?

49

1. Your carriage is at the corner; shall I order it up?

2. Do, I am in a hurry.

3. I say, coachman, come this way!

4. Here I am, sir, I have been waiting for the last half hour.

Nonsense! what nonsense! They are very particular in what they say, however, and that is a quality you know.

50

To fall out with.

(*Se brouiller avec.*)

Just tell me how the thing happened.

To fall out about.

(*Se brouiller au sujet de.*)

He is quite used up.

To become touchy.

I have heard that Bernard fell out with his partner Lacrosse yesterday afternoon. As you were present just tell me how the thing happened.

They owe a great deal. To tell you the truth, they are about used up. Bernard is always out of humor, and of late has become very touchy. They fell out about one of the clerks, a nephew of Lacrosse; Bernard pretending that his orders could not be mis-

To be out of humor.

(*être de mauvaise humeur.*)

His orders could not be misunderstood.

Had misunderstood him purposely.

(*Avait fait semblant de ne pas le comprendre exprès.*)

The river will freeze over.

Within a month.

To set in for cold.

Hard frost.

(*Gelée forte.*)

To be concerned in a question.

To be particular what one says about a person, about him, about them, &c.

It was lucky for me, for thee, for him, for her, &c.

Do you not think the river will freeze over within a month?

Have you had occasion to observe that those young men were concerned in the affair in question?

50 Continued.

understood, and that the clerk had misunderstood him purposely.

## 51

It may. The weather is setting in for cold. We had a hard frost last night.

I am certain they were not concerned in it. You must be particular in what you say about them. It was lucky for them that they did not meddle with it.

307258  
6522-5

# PROMISCUOUS.

52

NANTES, June 12th, 1870.

MY DEAR JAMES:

You will never succeed in the affair you have undertaken, because you do not go the right way to work. Instead of laying the blame on me, you ought to send about their business those that have advised you to borrow from Tom, Dick and Harry. I always told you that you could get along with 5,000 francs if you would proceed properly. This day three weeks I will meet you at Nantes, when we can talk over the whole matter. In the meantime, recollect the proverb, "Leave well alone."

Drop me a line to say that you will be ready to receive me.

Yours, truly,

GUILLAUME LEROUX.

PIERRE DE NERAC,

*à Paris.*

53

NEWPORT, April 20th, 1870.

DEAR FRIEND:

It was lucky for me that I got here in time to write to you by this evening's mail. I have had time to see your lawyer about the insurance business. He wishes to know whether you went into the country before the fire broke out in your house. He advises me to tell you that unless you proceed properly, it will go hard with you. I enclose a letter he handed me to send you. You will observe that he has set down in writing many reasons that you cannot be aware of. He says you must act as he directs, unless you are prepared to set the world at defiance.

Yours, truly,

W. LAPLACE.

Mr. C. BERTRAND,

*New York.*

54

NEWARK, April 11th, 1870.

DEAR SIR:

I write to say that after waiting for your brother's agent full two hours this morning, I received a note from him, in which he states that the unexpected arrival of his brother-in-law prevented him from keeping his appointment. I immediately went to his office and had a conversation with him. He talked so loud that I was obliged to take him down. He finally said that he was very hard pushed for money, but that if you would take his note at thirty days, he would forward it to you immediately. Let us know whether this will suit you.

Your very obedient servant,

THEODORE THOREAU.

Mr. ATHANASE GUILLET.

*New York.*

55

BORDEAUX, March 30th, 1870.

MY DEAR FRIEND:

I got here this morning quite exhausted after my long journey. Nevertheless I called immediately upon your father-in-law to let him know that the police officers were watching him. He told me that he knew already that he was watched, and that his enemies intended mischief. He will give them the slip by leaving this city to-morrow morning early. So be ready to receive him in Paris about the 4th of April. He has set his heart upon leaving France forever.

Let me know as soon as possible whether you have been able to engage a passage for him for America on the steamer up (*en partance pour*) for the 15th of April.

Yours, very truly,

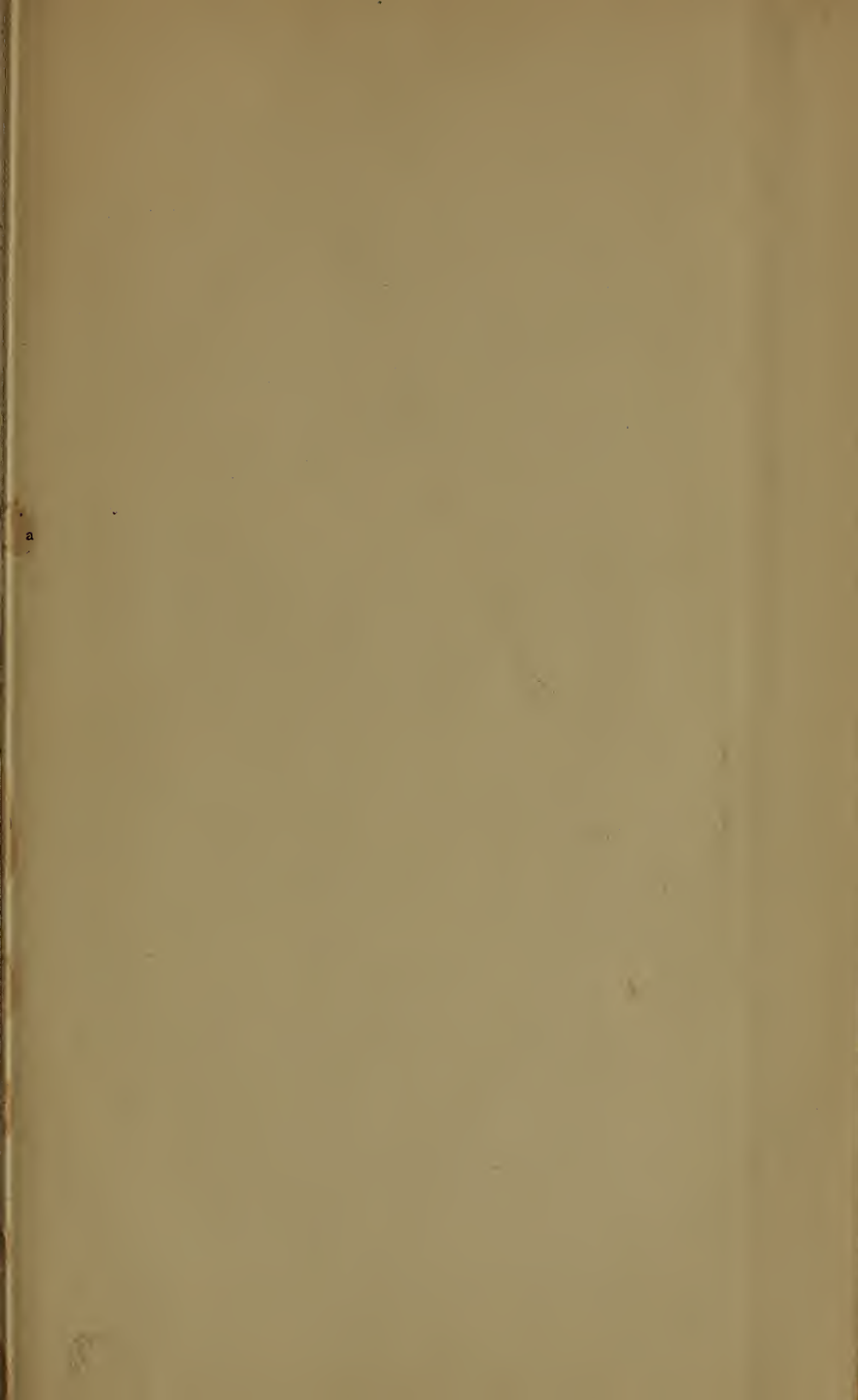
THEOPHILE GIRARDIN.

JEAN CARTIER, Esq.,

*Paris.*

*may 1870*

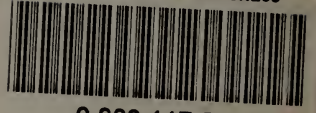








LIBRARY OF CONGRESS



0 003 117 524 0 ●